CHEM 114: HUMAN CHEMISTRY II

Pedro Muíño
Saint Francis University

LibreTexts™

St. Francis College

Chem 114: Human Chemistry II

Pedro Muíño

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide and accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden born from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.

LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and was supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

This text was compiled on 06/07/2025

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

12: Introduction to Organic Chemistry - Alkanes

- 12.1: The Nature of Organic Molecules
- 12.2: Families of Organic Molecules - Functional Groups
- 12.3: The Structure of Organic Molecules - Alkanes and Their Isomers
- 12.4: Drawing Organic Structures
- 12.5: The Shapes of Organic Molecules
- 12.6: Naming Alkanes
- 12.7: Properties of Alkanes
- 12.8: Reactions of Alkanes
- 12.9: Cycloalkanes
- 12.10: Drawing and Naming Cycloalkanes

13: Alkenes, Alkynes, and Aromatic Compounds

- 13.1: Alkenes and Alkynes
- 13.2: Naming Alkenes and Alkynes
- 13.3: The Structure of Alkenes- Cis-Trans Isomerism
- 13.4: Properties of Alkenes and Alkynes
- 13.5: Types of Organic Reactions
- 13.6: Reactions of Alkenes and Alkynes
- 13.7: Alkene Polymers
- 13.8: Aromatic Compounds and the Structure of Benzene
- 13.9: Naming Aromatic Compounds
- 13.10: Reactions of Aromatic Compounds

14: Some Compounds with Oxygen, Sulfur, or a Halogen

- 14.1: Alcohols, Phenols, and Ethers
- 14.2: Some Common Alcohols
- 14.3: Naming Alcohols
- 14.4: Properties of Alcohols
- 14.5: Reactions of Alcohols
- 14.6: Phenols
- 14.7: Acidity of Alcohols and Phenols
- 14.8: Ethers
- 14.9: Thiols and Disulfides
- 14.10: Halogen-Containing Compounds

15: Amines

- 15.1: Amines
- 15.2: Properties of Amines
- 15.3: Heterocyclic Nitrogen Compounds
- 15.4: Basicity of Amines
- 15.5: Amine Salts
- 15.6: Amines in Plants- Alkaloids

16: Aldehydes and Ketones

- 16.1: The Carbonyl Group
- 16.2: Naming Aldehydes and Ketones
- 16.3: Properties of Aldehydes and Ketones
- 16.4: Some Common Aldehydes and Ketones
- 16.5: Oxidation of Aldehydes
- 16.6: Reduction of Aldehydes and Ketones
- 16.7: Addition of Alcohols - Hemiacetals and Acetals

17: Carboxylic Acids and their Derivatives

- 17.1: Carboxylic Acids and Their Derivatives- Properties and Names
- 17.2: Some Common Carboxylic Acids
- 17.3: Acidity of Carboxylic Acids
- 17.4: Reactions of Carboxylic Acids - Ester and Amide Formation
- 17.5: Aspirin and Other Over-the-Counter Carboxylic Acid
- 17.6: Hydrolysis of Esters and Amides
- 17.7: Polyamides and Polyesters
- 17.8: Phosphoric Acid Derivatives

18: Amino Acids and Proteins

- 18.1: An Introduction to Biochemistry
- 18.2: Protein Structure and Function- An Overview
- 18.3: Amino Acids
- 18.4: Acid-Base Properties of Amino Acids
- 18.5: Handedness
- 18.6: Molecular Handedness and Amino Acids
- 18.7: Primary Protein Structure
- 18.8: Shape-Determining Interactions in Proteins
- 18.9: Secondary Protein Structure
- 18.10: Tertiary Protein Structure
- 18.11: Quaternary Protein Structure
- 18.12: Chemical Properties of Proteins

19: Enzymes and Vitamins

- 19.1: Catalysis by Enzymes
- 19.2: Enzyme Cofactors
- 19.3: Enzyme Classification
- 19.4: How Enzymes Work
- 19.5: Effect of Concentration on Enzyme Activity
- 19.6: Effect of Temperature and pH on Enzyme Activity
- 19.7: Enzyme Regulation - Feedback and Allosteric Control
- 19.8: Enzyme Regulation - Inhibition
- 19.9: Enzyme Regulation - Covalent Modification and Genetic Control
- 19.10: Vitamins and Minerals

20: The Generation of Biochemical Energy

- 20.1: Energy and Life
- 20.2: Energy and Biochemical Reactions
- 20.3: Cells and Their Structure
- 20.4: An Overview of Metabolism and Energy Production

- 20.5: Strategies of Metabolism - ATP and Energy Transfer
- 20.6: Strategies of Metabolism - Metabolic Pathways and Coupled Reactions
- 20.7: Strategies of Metabolism- Oxidized and Reduced Coenzymes
- 20.8: The Citric Acid Cycle
- 20.9: The Electron-Transport Chain and ATP Production
- 20.10: Harmful Oxygen By-Products and Antioxidant Vitamins

21: Carbohydrates

- 21.1: An Introduction to Carbohydrates
- 21.2: Handedness of Carbohydrates
- 21.3: The D and L Families of Sugars- Drawing Sugar Molecules
- 21.4: Structure of Glucose and Other Monosaccharides
- 21.5: Some Important Monosaccharides
- 21.6: Reactions of Monosaccharides
- 21.7: Disaccharides
- 21.8: Variations on the Carbohydrate Theme
- 21.9: Some Important Polysaccharides

22: Carbohydrate Metabolism

- 22.1: Digestion of Carbohydrates
- 22.2: Glucose Metabolism - An Overview
- 22.3: Glycolysis
- 22.4: Entry of Other Sugars into Glycolysis
- 22.5: The Fate of Pyruvate
- 22.6: Energy Output in Complete Catabolism of Glucose
- 22.7: 22.7. Regulation of Glucose Metabolism and Energy Production
- 22.8: Metabolism in Fasting and Starvation
- 22.9: Metabolism in Diabetes Mellitus
- 22.10: Glycogen Metabolism- Glycogenesis and Glycogenolysis
- 22.11: Gluconeogenesis- Glucose from Noncarbohydrates

23: Lipids

- 23.1: Structure and Classification of Lipids
- 23.2: Fatty Acids and Their Esters
- 23.3: Properties of Fats and Oils
- 23.4: Chemical Reactions of Triacylglycerols
- 23.5: Phospholipids and Glycolipids
- 23.6: Sterols
- 23.7: Structure of Cell Membranes
- 23.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes
- 23.9: Eicosanoids- Prostaglandins and Leukotrienes

24: Lipid Metabolism

- 24.1: Digestion of Triacylglycerols
- 24.2: Lipoproteins for Lipid Transport
- 24.3: Triacylglycerol Metabolism - An Overview
- 24.4: Storage and Mobilization of Triacylglycerols
- 24.5: Oxidation of Fatty Acids
- 24.6: Energy from Fatty Acid Oxidation
- 24.7: Ketone Bodies and Ketoacidosis

- 24.8: Biosynthesis of Fatty Acids

25: Nucleic Acids and Protein Synthesis

- 25.1: DNA, Chromosomes, and Genes
- 25.2: Composition of Nucleic Acids
- 25.3: The Structure of Nucleic Acid Chains
- 25.4: Base Pairing in DNA- The Watson-Crick Model
- 25.5: Nucleic Acids and Heredity
- 25.6: Replication of DNA
- 25.7: Translation- Transfer RNA and Protein Synthesis
- 25.8: Structure and Function of RNA
- 25.9: Transcription - RNA Synthesis
- 25.10: The Genetic Code

26: Genomics

- 26.1: Mapping the Human Genome
- 26.2: A Trip Along a Chromosome
- 26.3: Mutations and Polymorphisms
- 26.4: Recombinant DNA
- 26.5: Genomics- Using What We Know

27: Chemical Messengers- Hormones, Neurotransmitters, and Drugs

- 27.1: Messenger Molecules
- 27.2: Hormones and the Endocrine System
- 27.3: How Hormones Work - Epinephrine and Fight-or-Flight
- 27.4: Amino Acid Derivatives and Polypeptides as Hormones
- 27.5: Steroid Hormones
- 27.6: Neurotransmitters
- 27.7: How Neurotransmitters Work- Acetylcholine, Its Agonists and Antagonists
- 27.8: Histamine and Antihistamines
- 27.9: Serotonin, Norepinephrine, and Dopamine
- 27.10: Neuropeptides and Pain Relief
- 27.11: Drug Discovery and Drug Design

28: Body Fluids

- 28.1: Body Water and Its Solutes
- 28.2: Fluid Balance
- 28.3: Blood
- 28.4: Plasma Proteins, White Blood Cells, and Immunity
- 28.5: Blood Clotting
- 28.6: Red Blood Cells and Blood Gases
- 28.7: The Kidney and Urine Formation
- 28.8: Urine Composition and Function

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Licensing

*A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in **Back Matter/Detailed Licensing**.*

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

12: Introduction to Organic Chemistry - Alkanes

12.1: The Nature of Organic Molecules
12.2: Families of Organic Molecules - Functional Groups
12.3: The Structure of Organic Molecules - Alkanes and Their Isomers
12.4: Drawing Organic Structures
12.5: The Shapes of Organic Molecules
12.6: Naming Alkanes
12.7: Properties of Alkanes
12.8: Reactions of Alkanes
12.9: Cycloalkanes
12.10: Drawing and Naming Cycloalkanes

12: Introduction to Organic Chemistry - Alkanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.1: The Nature of Organic Molecules

Learning Objectives

- Describe the basic structural properties of simple organic molecules.

Organic chemistry is the study of the chemistry of carbon-containing compounds. Carbon is singled out because it has a chemical diversity unrivaled by any other chemical element. Its diversity is based on the following:

- Carbon atoms bond reasonably strongly with other carbon atoms.
- Carbon atoms bond reasonably strongly with atoms of other elements.
- Carbon atoms make a large number of covalent bonds (four).

Curiously, elemental carbon is not particularly abundant. It does not even appear in the list of the most common elements in Earth's crust. Nevertheless, all living things consist of organic compounds. Most organic chemicals are covalent compounds, which is why we introduce organic chemistry here. By convention, compounds containing carbonate ions and bicarbonate ions, as well as carbon dioxide and carbon monoxide, are not considered part of organic chemistry, even though they contain carbon.

Structural Properties of Carbon Compounds

A carbon atom has four valence electrons, it is **tetravalent**. Carbon can form four *covalent* bonds, or *share electrons with* up to four atoms in order to gain a complete octet. The simplest carbon compounds contain only carbon and hydrogen and are called **hydrocarbons**. Methane, the simplest hydrocarbon, contains a single carbon with four covalently bonded hydrogen atoms. Recalling what you have learned about molecular structures and VSEPR, we know that methane is **tetrahedral** (four electron groups and no lone pairs).

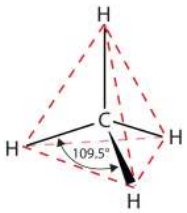


Figure 12.1.1: The Tetrahedral Methane Molecule

Carbon can also form **double bonds** by sharing *four electrons* with a neighboring carbon atom or **triple bonds** by sharing *six electrons* with a neighboring carbon atom. As shown in Figure 12.1.2 below, carbon with three electron groups attached will be **trigonal planar**, and carbon with two electron groups attached will be **linear**.

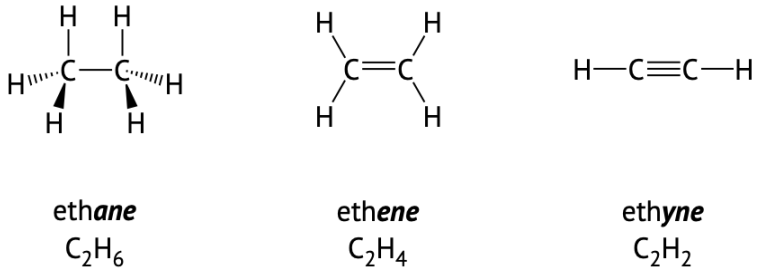


Figure 12.1.2: Two carbons can be attached together in single bond, a double bond, or a triple bond. Notice, in each example carbon makes four total bonds. The number of hydrogen atoms in each molecule decreases as the number of carbon–carbon bonds increase.

Simple hydrocarbon compounds are *nonpolar* due to the shape and the small electronegativity difference between carbon and hydrogen atoms. When carbon is bonded to a halogen or oxygen atom, the resulting bond is *polar*. It may be useful to review the section on electronegativity and polarity of bonds and molecules to be able to describe the properties of different organic compounds, specifically how they react and interact with other molecules.

Comparing Organic and Inorganic Compounds

Organic compounds, like inorganic compounds, obey all the natural laws. Often there is no clear distinction in the chemical or physical properties among organic and inorganic molecules. Nevertheless, it is useful to compare typical members of each class, as in Table 12.1.1. Keep in mind, however, that there are exceptions to every category in this table.

Table 12.1.1: Contrasting Properties and Examples of Organic and Inorganic Compounds

Organic Properties	**Example:** Hexane	**Inorganic Properties**	**Example:** NaCl
low melting points	−95°C	high melting points	801°C
low boiling points	69°C	high boiling points	1,413°C
low solubility in water; high solubility in nonpolar solvents	insoluble in water; soluble in gasoline	greater solubility in water; low solubility in nonpolar solvents	soluble in water; insoluble in gasoline
flammable	highly flammable	nonflammable	nonflammable
aqueous solutions do not conduct electricity	nonconductive	aqueous solutions conduct electricity	conductive in aqueous solution
exhibit covalent bonding	covalent bonds	exhibit ionic bonding	ionic bonds

12.1: The Nature of Organic Molecules is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.6: Organic Chemistry** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **12.1: Organic Chemistry** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

12.2: Families of Organic Molecules - Functional Groups

Learning Objectives

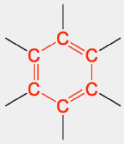
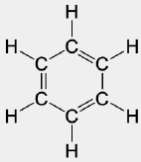
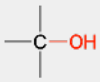
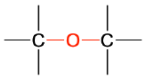
- Identify and describe functional groups in organic molecules.

Organic molecules can be classified into *families* based on structural similarities. Within a family, molecules have similar physical behavior and often have predictable chemical reactivity. The structural components differentiating different organic families involve specific arrangements of atoms or bonds, called **functional groups**. If you understand the behavior of a particular functional group, you can describe the general properties of that class of compounds.

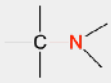
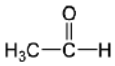
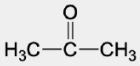
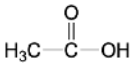
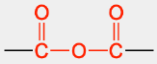
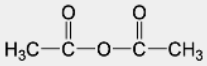
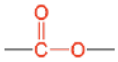
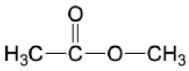
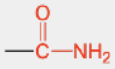
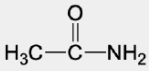
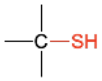
The simplest organic compounds are in the **alkane** family and contain only carbon–carbon and carbon–hydrogen *single* bonds but do not have any specific functional group. Hydrocarbons containing at least one carbon–carbon double bond, (denoted C=C), are in the **alkene** family. **Alkynes** have at least one carbon–carbon triple bond (C≡C). Both carbon–carbon double bonds and triple bonds chemically react in specific ways that differ from reactions of alkanes and each other, making these specific functional groups.

In the next few chapters, we will learn more about additional functional groups that are made up of atoms or groups of atoms attached to hydrocarbons. Being able to recognize different functional groups will help to understand and describe common medications and biomolecules such as amino acids, carbohydrates, and fats. Table 12.2.1 and Figure 12.2.1 below list several of the functional groups to become familiar with as you learn about organic chemistry.

Table 12.2.1: Organic Families and Functional Groups

Family Name	Functional Group Structure	Simple Example Structure	Simple Example Name	Name Suffix
alkane	none	$CH_3CH_2CH_3$	propane	*-ane*
alkene		$H_2C{=}CH_2$	ethene (ethylene)	*-ene*
alkyne		HC≡CH	ethyne (acetylene)	*-yne*
aromatic			benzene	none
alkyl halide	(X = F, Cl, Br, I)	CH_3CH_2Cl	chloroethane	none
alcohol		CH_3CH_2OH	ethanol	*-ol*
ether		CH_3CH_2–O–CH_2CH_3	diethyl ether	none*

Atoms and bonds in red indicate the functional group. Bonds not specified are attached to R groups (carbons and hydrogens).
*Ethers do not have a suffix in their common name; all ethers end with the word *ether*.

Family Name	Functional Group Structure	Simple Example Structure	Simple Example Name	Name Suffix
amine		$CH_3CH_2NH_2$	ethylamine	*-amine*
aldehyde			ethanal	*-al*
ketone			propanone (acetone)	*-one*
carboxylic acid			ethanoic acid (acetic acid)	*-oic acid*
anhydride			acetic anhydride	none
ester			methyl ethanoate (methyl acetate)	*-ate*
amide			acetamide	*-amide*
thiol		CH_3CH_2SH	ethanethiol	*-thiol*
disulfide		$CH_3S–SCH_3$	dimethyl disulfide	none
sulfide		$CH_3CH_2SCH_3$	ethyl methyl sulfide	none

Atoms and bonds in red indicate the functional group. Bonds not specified are attached to R groups (carbons and hydrogens).
*Ethers do not have a suffix in their common name; all ethers end with the word *ether*.

Organic-Functional-Groups-2016_24ee.pdf Organic-Functional-Groups-2016.pdf

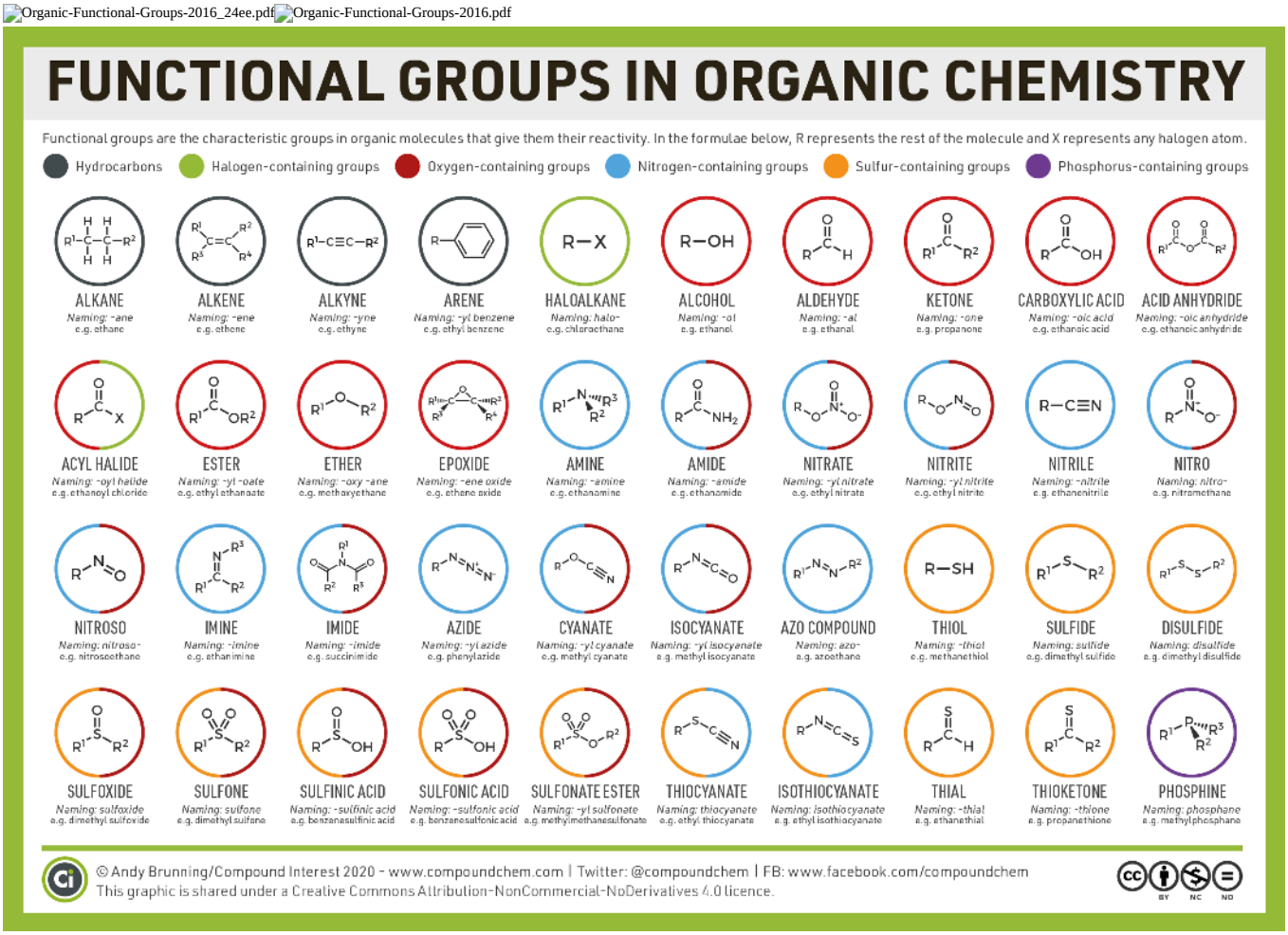


Figure 12.2.1: Functional groups in organic chemistry. (CC BY-NC-ND, CompoundChem.com).

12.2: Families of Organic Molecules - Functional Groups is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.3: The Structure of Organic Molecules - Alkanes and Their Isomers

Learning Objectives

- To identify simple alkanes as straight-chain or branched-chain.
- Describe and recognize structural and functional group isomers.

As you just learned, there is a wide variety of organic compounds containing different functional groups. However, all organic compounds are hydrocarbons, they contain hydrogen and carbon. The general rule for hydrocarbons is that any carbon must be bonded to at least one other carbon atom, except in the case of methane which only contains one carbon. The bonded carbons form the *backbone* of the molecule to which the hydrogen atoms (or other functional groups) are attached.

Hydrocarbons with only carbon-to-carbon single bonds (C–C) are called **alkanes** (or saturated hydrocarbons). *Saturated*, in this case, means that each carbon atom is bonded to four other atoms (hydrogen or carbon)—the most possible; there are no double or triple bonds in these molecules.

> Saturated fats and oils are organic molecules that do not have carbon-to-carbon double bonds (C=C).

The three simplest alkanes—methane (CH_4), ethane (C_2H_6), and propane (C_3H_8) shown in Figure 12.3.1, are the beginning of a series of compounds in which any two members in a sequence differ by one carbon atom and two hydrogen atoms—namely, a CH_2 unit (called methylene). Alkanes follow the general formula: C_nH_{2n+2}. Using this formula, we can write a molecular formula for any alkane with a given number of carbon atoms. For example, an alkane with eight carbon atoms has the molecular formula $C_8H_{(2 \times 8) + 2} = C_8H_{18}$.

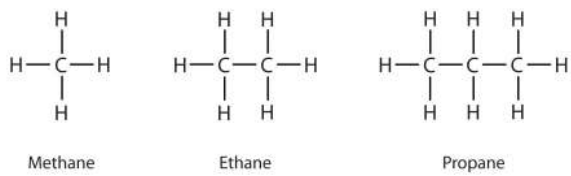
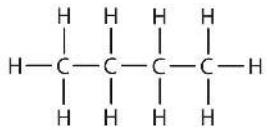


Figure 12.3.1: The Three Simplest Alkanes

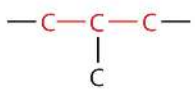
Isomers

Alkanes that contain one continuous chain of linked carbons are called **straight-chain** alkanes. As the number of carbons in a chain increases beyond three, the arrangement of atoms can expand to include **branched-chain** alkanes. In a branched chain, one or more hydrogen atoms along the chain is replaced by a carbon atom (or a separate chain of carbon atoms). It is important to note that while the structural arrangement of these chains are different, continuous versus branched, they both still follow the same general formula for alkanes as introduced above, C_nH_{2n+2}. In fact, alkane chains that have the same molecular formula (same number of carbon and hydrogen), but a different arrangement of atoms, are called **isomers**. Let's look at an example below:

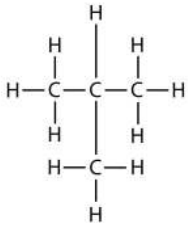
The structure of butane (C_4H_{10}) is written by stringing four carbon atoms in a row, and then adding enough hydrogen atoms to give each carbon atom four bonds:



Butane is a straight-chain alkane, but there is another way to put 4 carbon atoms and 10 hydrogen atoms together. Place 3 of the carbon atoms in a row and then *branch* the fourth carbon off the middle carbon atom:



Now we add enough hydrogen atoms to give each carbon four bonds:



The result is the isomer 2-methylpropane (also called isobutane), which is a branched-chain alkane with the same formula as butane, (C_4H_{10}). However, it is a *different* molecule with a *different* name and *different* chemical properties. A side-by-side comparison of these two molecules is shown in the below figure.

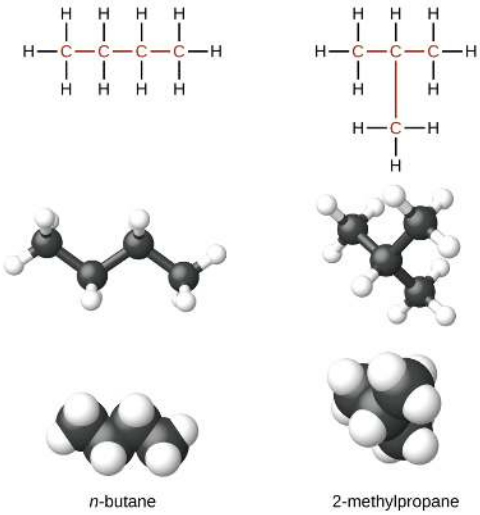


Figure 12.3.1: n-butane and 2-methylpropane. The compounds *n*-butane and 2-methylpropane are structural isomers, meaning they have the same molecular formula, C_4H_{10}, but different spatial arrangements of the atoms in their molecules. We use the term *normal*, or the prefix *n*, to refer to a chain of carbon atoms without branching.

The four-carbon straight chain butane may be drawn with different bends or kinks in the backbone (Figure 12.3.2) because the groups can rotate freely about the C–C bonds. This rotation or bending of the carbon chain does *not* change the identity of the compound; all of the following structures represent the *same* compound, butane, with different bends in the chain:

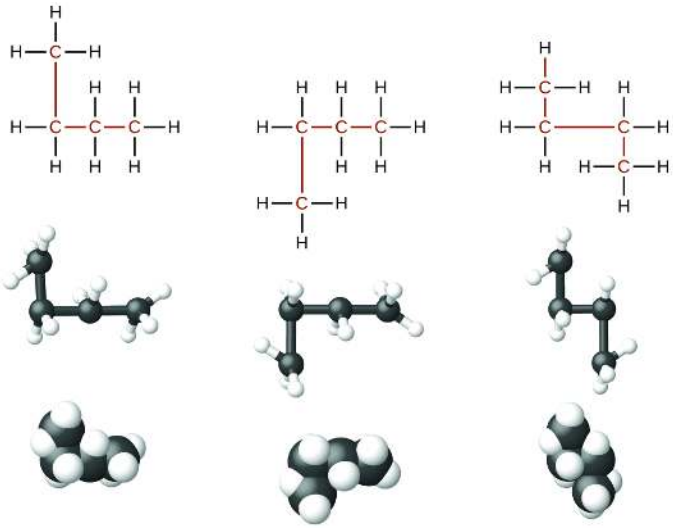
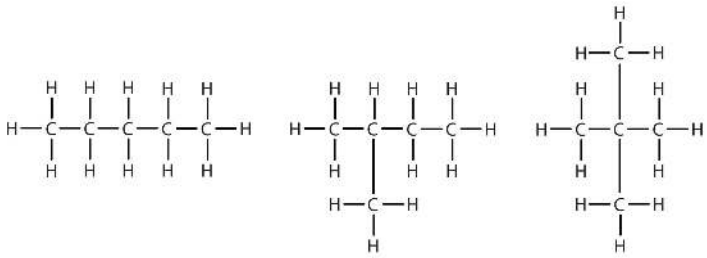


Figure 12.3.2: These three representations of the structure of n-butane are not isomers because they all contain the same arrangement of atoms and bonds.

When identifying isomers, it is useful to trace the carbon backbone with your finger or a pencil and count carbons until you need to lift your hand or pencil to get the another carbon. Try this with each of the above arrangements of four carbons, then do the same

with 2-methylpropane. Butane has a continuous chain of four carbons no matter how the bonds are rotated – you can connect the carbons in a line without lifting your finger from the page. How many continuous carbons are in the 2-methylpropane backbone? You should be able to count a continuous chain of three carbon atoms only, with the fourth carbon attached as a branch, (compare the two structures in Figure 12.3.1). In a later chapter, you will learn how to systematically name compounds by counting the number of carbons in the longest continuous chain and identifying any functional groups present.

Adding one more carbon to the butane chain gives pentane, which has the formula, C_5H_{12}. Pentane and its two branched-chain isomers are shown below. The compound at the far left is pentane because it has all five carbon atoms in a continuous chain. The compound in the middle is isopentane; like isobutane, it has a one CH_3 branch off the second carbon atom of the continuous chain. The compound at the far right, discovered after the other two, was named neopentane (from the Greek *neos*, meaning "new"). Although all three have the same molecular formula, they have different properties, including boiling points: pentane, 36.1°C; isopentane, 27.7°C; and neopentane, 9.5°C. The names isopentane and neopentane are common names for these molecules. As mentioned above, we will learn the systematic rules for naming compounds in later chapters.



Pentane Isopentane Neopentane

A continuous (unbranched) chain of carbon atoms is often called a *straight chain* even though the tetrahedral arrangement about each carbon gives it a zigzag shape. Straight-chain alkanes are sometimes called *normal alkanes*, and their names are given the prefix *n*-. For example, butane is called *n*-butane. We will not use that prefix here because it is not a part of the system established by the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry.

12.3: The Structure of Organic Molecules - Alkanes and Their Isomers is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **12.2: Structures and Names of Alkanes** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **12.3: Branched-Chain Alkanes** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

12.4: Drawing Organic Structures

Learning Objectives

- Draw condensed structures and line structures for simple compounds from the given molecular formulas.
- Convert between expanded, condensed and line structures.

We use several kinds of formulas to describe organic compounds. A *molecular formula* shows only the number and type of atoms in a molecule. For example, the molecular formula C_4H_{10} tells us there are 4 carbon atoms and 10 hydrogen atoms in a molecule, but it doesn't distinguish between butane and 2-methylpropane. A structural formula shows all the carbon and hydrogen atoms and the bonds attaching them (**expanded structure**). This type of structure allows for easy identification of specific isomers by showing the order of attachment of the various atoms.

Unfortunately, structural formulas that show the bonds between *all* atoms are sometimes difficult to type/write and take up a lot of space, especially when the number of atoms greatly increases. Chemists often use **condensed structures**, that show hydrogen atoms right next to the carbon atoms to which they are attached, to alleviate these problems. The ultimate condensed formula is a **line (or line-angle) structure**, in which carbon atoms are implied at the corners and ends of lines rather than written out, and each carbon atom is understood to be attached to the appropriate amount of hydrogen atoms to give each carbon atom four bonds. Parentheses in condensed structural formulas indicate that the enclosed grouping of atoms is attached to the adjacent carbon atom. All three of these structure types are illustrated for butane and its isomer, 2-methylpropane in Figure 12.4.1 below.

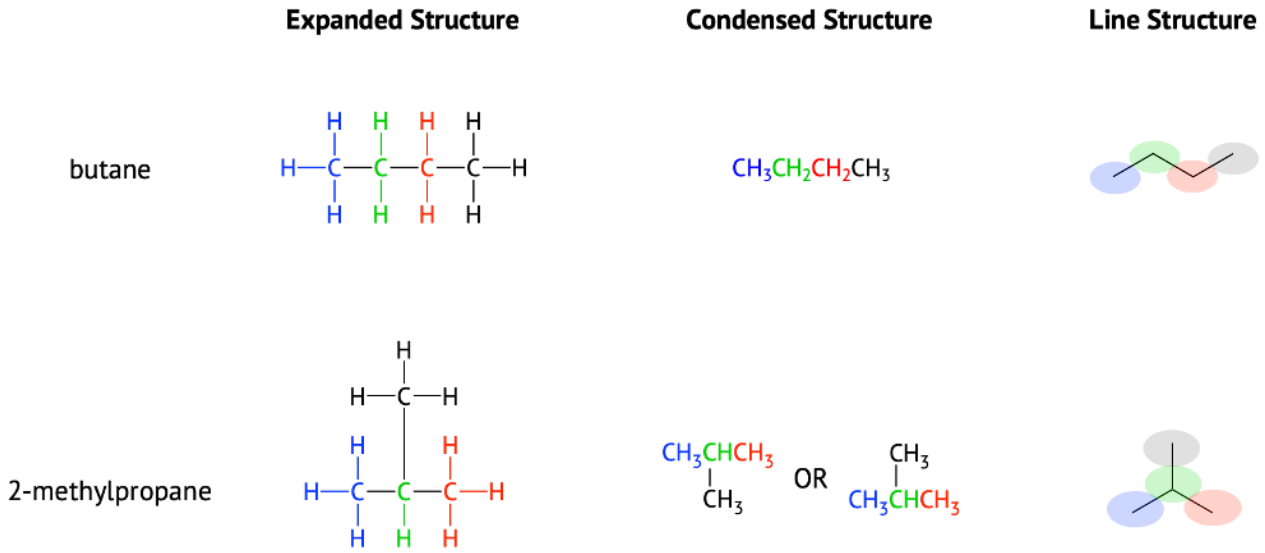


Figure 12.4.1: Structural representations for butane and its isomer, 2-methylpropane. (The colors are used to help identify carbons and do not represent any special properties.)

12.4: Drawing Organic Structures is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **12.4: Condensed Structural and Line-Angle Formulas** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

12.5: The Shapes of Organic Molecules

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

12.5: The Shapes of Organic Molecules is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.6: Naming Alkanes

Learning Objectives

- To name alkanes by the IUPAC system and write formulas for alkanes given IUPAC names

As noted in previously, the number of isomers increases rapidly as the number of carbon atoms increases: there are 3 pentanes, 5 hexanes, 9 heptanes, and 18 octanes, etc. It would be difficult to assign each compound unique individual names that we could remember easily. A systematic way of naming hydrocarbons and other organic compounds has been devised by the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC). These rules, used worldwide, are known as the IUPAC System of Nomenclature. (Some of the names mentioned earlier, such as isobutane, isopentane, and neopentane, do not follow these rules and are called *common names*.)

In the IUPAC system, a compound is named according to the number of carbons in the longest continuous chain (LCC) or parent chain and the family it belongs to. Atoms or groups attached to this carbon chain, called *substituents*, are then named, with their positions indicated by a numerical prefix at the beginning of the name:

Prefix (substituent) – Parent (# carbons) – Suffix (family name)

2-methylpropane

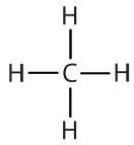
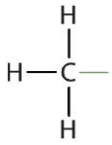
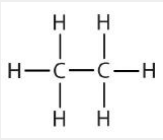
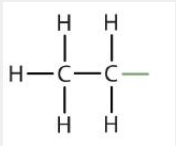
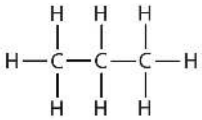
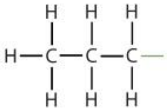
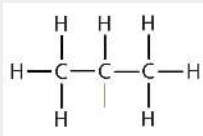
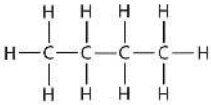
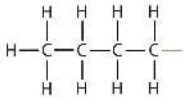
(Table 12.6.1) below lists the IUPAC parent names that are used for charbon chains containing 1 to 10 carbons, along with straight-chain alkane examples for each. Notice that the suffix for each example in this table is *-ane*, which indicates these are members of the alk*ane* family.

Table 12.6.1: Parent name for 1-10 carbons and Example Alkanes

Number of Carbons	Parent Chain (LCC) Name	Example Alkane Name	Example Condensed Structural Formula
1	*meth-*	methane	CH_4
2	*eth-*	ethane	CH_3CH_3
3	*prop-*	propane	$CH_3CH_2CH_3$
4	*but-*	butane	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$
5	*pent-*	pentane	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$
6	*hex-*	hexane	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$
7	*hept-*	heptane	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$
8	*oct-*	octane	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$
9	*non-*	nonane	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$
10	*dec-*	decane	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$

Atoms or groups of atoms that branch off the parent chain are called **substituents**. When the substituent is a carbon or group of carbons, such as $–CH_3$ or $–CH_2CH_3$, it is called an **alkyl group**. Alkyl groups are alkanes that have had one hydrogen removed to allow for binding to a main chain carbon and are named by replacing the *-ane* suffix of the parent hydrocarbon with *-yl*. For example, the $–CH_3$ group derived from methane (CH_4) results from subtracting one hydrogen atom and is called a **methyl group**. Removing a hydrogen from ethane, CH_3CH_3, gives $–CH_2CH_3$, or the **ethyl group**. The alkyl groups we will use most frequently are listed in Table 12.6.2 Alkyl groups are not independent molecules; they are parts of molecules that we consider as a unit to name compounds systematically.

Table 12.6.2: Common Alkyl Groups

Parent Alkane		Alkyl Group		Condensed Structural Formula
methane		methyl		CH_3–
ethane		ethyl		CH_3CH_2–
propane		propyl		$CH_3CH_2CH_2$–
		isopropyl		$(CH_3)_2CH$–
butane		butyl		$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2$–
		sec-butyl		
		isobutyl		
		tert-butyl (tBu)		

Simplified IUPAC rules for naming alkanes are as follows (demonstrated in Example 12.6.1).

Step 1: **Name the parent chain.** Find the longest continuous chain, (it may not always be the most obvious chain written in one line), and name according to the number of carbon atoms it contains. Add the suffix *-ane* to indicate that the molecule is an alkane. Use Table 12.6.1 as a reference to start, but it is a good idea to commit these to memory.

Step 2: **Number the carbon atoms in the parent chain,** giving carbons with any substituents attached the lowest number possible. These numbers are used to locate where substituents are attached to a main chain.

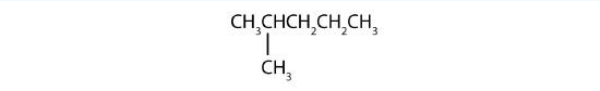
Step 3: **Name any substituents (including the location number).** If the same alkyl group appears more than once, the numbers of all the carbon atoms to which it is attached are expressed. If the same group appears more than once on the same carbon atom, the number of that carbon atom is repeated as many times as the group appears. Moreover, the number of identical groups is indicated by the Greek prefixes *di-*, *tri-*, *tetra-*, and so on. These prefixes are *not* considered in determining the alphabetical order of the substituents. For example, ethyl is listed before dimethyl; the di- is simply ignored. The last alkyl group named is prefixed to the name of the parent alkane to form one word.

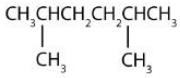
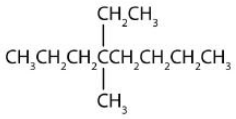
Step 4: **Write the name of the compound as a single word placing the substituent groups first (in alphabetical order), then the parent name, then the family name.** Hyphens are used to separate numbers from the names of substituents; commas separate numbers from each other.

When these rules are followed, every unique compound receives its own exclusive name. The rules enable us to not only name a compound from a given structure but also draw a structure from a given name. The best way to learn how to use the IUPAC system is to practice it, not just memorize the rules. It's easier than it looks.

Example 12.6.1

Name each compound.

1. 

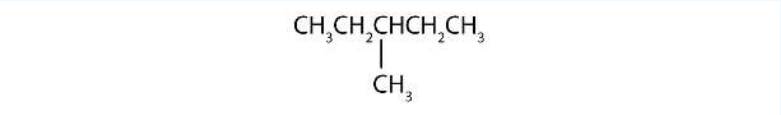
- 
- 

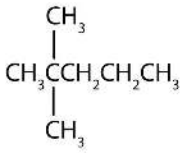
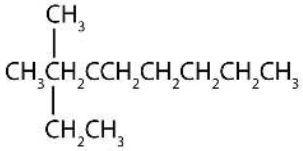
Solution

1. Step 1: The LCC has five carbon atoms, and so the parent compound name is pentane. Step 2: Number the carbons in the LCC from left to right. Step 3: There is a methyl group attached to carbon #2 of the pentane chain. Step 4: The name is 2-methylpentane.
2. Step 1: The LCC has six carbon atoms, so the parent compound is hexane. Step 2: Number the carbons in the LCC from left to right (or right to left, either way will be identical numbering). Step 3: There are two methyl groups attached to the second and fifth carbon atoms. Step 4: The name is 2,5-dimethylhexane.
3. Step 1: The LCC has eight carbon atoms, so the parent compound is octane. Step 2: Number the carbons in the LCC from left to right to give the *lower* number. Step 3: There are methyl and ethyl groups, both attached to the fourth carbon atom. Step 4: The correct name is thus 4-ethyl-4-methyloctane.

Exercise 12.6.1

Name each compound.

1. 

- 
- 

Example 12.6.2

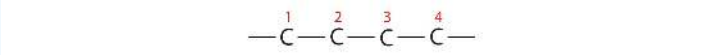
Draw the structure for each compound.

a. 2,3-dimethylbutane
b. 4-ethyl-2-methylheptane

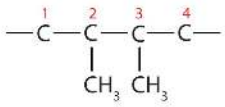
Solution

In drawing structures, always start with the parent chain.

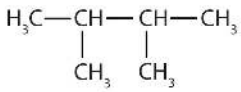
a. The parent chain is butane, indicating four carbon atoms in the LCC.



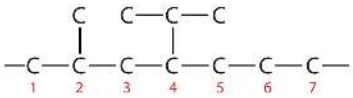
Then add the substituents at their proper positions. You can number the parent chain from either direction as long as you are consistent; just don't change directions before the structure is done. The name indicates two methyl ($–CH_3$) groups, one on the second carbon atom and one on the third.



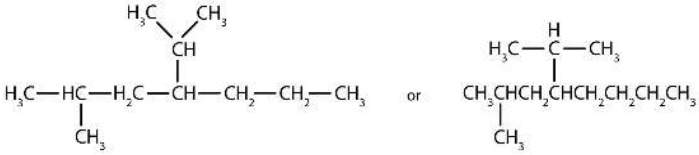
Finally, fill in all the hydrogen atoms, keeping in mind that each carbon atom must have four bonds total.



- Adding the substituents at their proper positions gives



Filling in all the hydrogen atoms gives the following condensed structural formulas (both are correct):



Note that the bonds (dashes) can be shown or not; sometimes they are needed for spacing.

? Exercise 12.6.2

Draw the structure for each compound.

a. 4-ethyloctane
b. 3-ethyl-2-methylpentane
c. 3,3,5-trimethylheptane

12.6: Naming Alkanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **12.5: IUPAC Nomenclature** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **12.2: Structures and Names of Alkanes** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

12.7: Properties of Alkanes

Learning Objectives

- To identify the physical properties of alkanes and describe trends in these properties.

Because alkanes have relatively predictable physical properties and undergo relatively few chemical reactions other than combustion, they serve as a basis of comparison for the properties of many other organic compound families. Let's consider their physical properties first.

Table 12.7.1 describes some of the properties of some of the first 10 straight-chain alkanes. Because alkane molecules are nonpolar, they are insoluble in water, which is a polar solvent, but are soluble in nonpolar and slightly polar solvents. Consequently, alkanes themselves are commonly used as solvents for organic substances of low polarity, such as fats, oils, and waxes. Nearly all alkanes have densities less than 1.0 g/mL and are therefore less dense than water (the density of H_2O is 1.00 g/mL at 20°C). These properties explain why oil and grease do not mix with water but rather float on its surface.

Table 12.7.1: Physical Properties of Some Alkanes

Molecular Name	Formula	Melting Point (°C)	Boiling Point (°C)	Density (20°C)*	Physical State (at 20°C)
methane	CH_4	–182	–164	0.668 g/L	gas
ethane	C_2H_6	–183	–89	1.265 g/L	gas
propane	C_3H_8	–190	–42	1.867 g/L	gas
butane	C_4H_{10}	–138	–1	2.493 g/L	gas
pentane	C_5H_{12}	–130	36	0.626 g/mL	liquid
hexane	C_6H_{14}	–95	69	0.659 g/mL	liquid
octane	C_8H_{18}	–57	125	0.703 g/mL	liquid
decane	$C_{10}H_{22}$	–30	174	0.730 g/mL	liquid

*Note the change in units going from gases (grams per liter) to liquids (grams per milliliter). Gas densities are at 1 atm pressure.

Figure 12.7.1: Oil Spills. Crude oil coats the water's surface in the Gulf of Mexico after the *Deepwater Horizon* oil rig sank following an explosion. The leak was a mile below the surface, making it difficult to estimate the size of the spill. One liter of oil can create a slick 2.5 hectares (6.3 acres) in size. This and similar spills provide a reminder that hydrocarbons and water don't mix. Source: Photo courtesy of NASA Goddard / MODIS Rapid Response Team, NASA.gov, Topics, Earth Features, Oil Spill(opens in new window) [www.nasa.gov].

Looking Closer: Gas Densities and Fire Hazards

Table 12.7.1 indicates that the first four members of the alkane series are gases at ordinary temperatures. Natural gas is composed chiefly of methane, which has a density of about 0.67 g/L. The density of air is about 1.29 g/L. Because natural gas is less dense than air, it rises. When a natural-gas leak is detected and shut off in a room, the gas can be removed by opening an upper window. On the other hand, bottled gas can be either propane (density 1.88 g/L) or butanes (a mixture of butane and isobutane; density about 2.5 g/L). Both are much heavier than air (density 1.2 g/L). If bottled gas escapes into a building, it collects near the floor. This presents a much more serious fire hazard than a natural-gas leak because it is more difficult to rid the room of the heavier gas.

Also shown in Table 12.7.1 are the boiling points of the straight-chain alkanes increase with increasing molar mass. This general rule holds true for the straight-chain homologs of all organic compound families. Larger molecules have greater surface areas and consequently interact more strongly; more energy is therefore required to separate them. For a given molar mass, the boiling points of alkanes are relatively low because these nonpolar molecules have only weak dispersion forces to hold them together in the liquid state.

Looking Closer: An Alkane Basis for Properties of Other Compounds

An understanding of the physical properties of the alkanes is important in that petroleum and natural gas and the many products derived from them—gasoline, bottled gas, solvents, plastics, and more—are composed primarily of alkanes. This understanding is also vital because it is the basis for describing the properties of other organic and biological compound families. For example, large portions of the structures of lipids consist of nonpolar alkyl groups. Lipids include the dietary fats and fatlike compounds called phospholipids and sphingolipids that serve as structural components of living tissues. These compounds have both polar and nonpolar groups, enabling them to bridge the gap between water-soluble and water-insoluble phases. This characteristic is essential for the selective permeability of cell membranes.

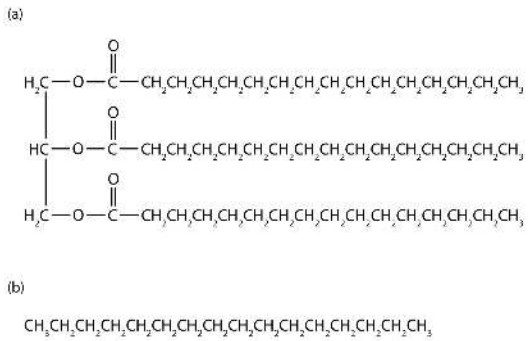


Figure 12.7.2: Tripalmitin (a), a typical fat molecule, has long hydrocarbon chains typical of most lipids. Compare these chains to hexadecane (b), an alkane with 16 carbon atoms.

Key Takeaway

- Alkanes are nonpolar compounds that are low boiling and insoluble in water.

12.7: Properties of Alkanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **12.6: Physical Properties of Alkanes** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

12.8: Reactions of Alkanes

Learning Objectives

- Understand the reactions of alkanes: combustion and halogenation.

Alkanes are relatively stable, nonpolar molecules, that will not react with acids, bases, or oxidizing or reducing reagents. Alkanes undergo so few reactions that they are sometimes called *paraffins*, from the Latin *parum affinis*, meaning "little affinity."

However, heat or light can initiate the breaking of C–H or C–C single bonds in reactions called **combustion** and **halogenation**.

Combustion

Nothing happens when alkanes are merely mixed with oxygen (O_2) at room temperature, but when a flame or spark provides the activation energy, a highly exothermic combustion reaction proceeds vigorously. For methane (CH_4), the **combustion** reaction is as follows:

$$CH_4 + 2O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + 2H_2O + \text{heat} \tag{12.8.1}$$

As a consequence, alkanes are excellent fuels. For example, methane, CH_4, is the principal component of natural gas. Butane, C_4H_{10}, used in camping stoves and lighters is an alkane. Gasoline is a liquid mixture of straight- and branched-chain alkanes, each containing from five to nine carbon atoms, plus various additives to improve its performance as a fuel. Kerosene, diesel oil, and fuel oil are primarily mixtures of alkanes with higher molecular masses. The main source of these liquid alkane fuels is crude oil, a complex mixture that is separated by fractional distillation. Fractional distillation takes advantage of differences in the boiling points of the components of the mixture (Figure 12.8.1). You may recall that boiling point is a function of intermolecular interactions, which was discussed in an earlier chapter.

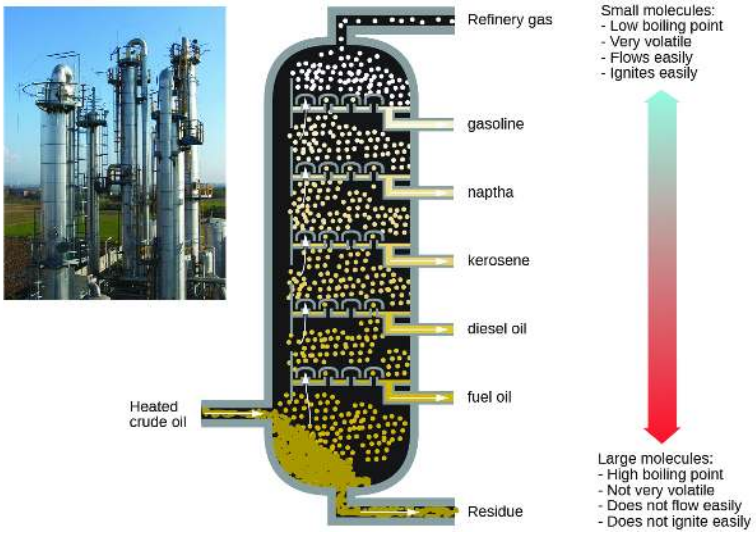


Figure 12.8.1:In a column for the fractional distillation of crude oil, oil heated to about 425 °C in the furnace vaporizes when it enters the base of the tower. The vapors rise through bubble caps in a series of trays in the tower. As the vapors gradually cool, fractions of higher, then of lower, boiling points condense to liquids and are drawn off. (credit left: modification of work by Luigi Chiesa)

If the reactants of combustion reactions are adequately mixed, and there is sufficient oxygen, the only products are carbon dioxide (CO_2), water (H_2O), and energy—heat for cooking foods, heating homes, and drying clothes. Because conditions are rarely ideal, other unwanted by-products are frequently formed. When the oxygen supply is limited, carbon monoxide (CO) is a by-product:

$$2CH_4 + 3O_2 \rightarrow 2CO + 4H_2O \tag{12.8.2}$$

This reaction is responsible for dozens of deaths each year from unventilated or improperly adjusted gas heaters. (Similar reactions with similar results occur with kerosene heaters.)

Halogenation

In **halogenation** reactions, alkanes react with the halogens chlorine (Cl_2) and bromine (Br_2) in the presence of ultraviolet light or at high temperatures to yield chlorinated and brominated alkanes. For example, chlorine reacts with excess methane (CH_4) to give methyl chloride (CH_3Cl).

$$CH_4 + Cl_2 \rightarrow CH_3Cl + HCl \tag{12.8.3}$$

With more chlorine, a mixture of products is obtained: CH_3Cl, CH_2Cl_2, $CHCl_3$, and CCl_4. Fluorine (F_2), the lightest halogen, combines explosively with most hydrocarbons. Iodine (I_2) is relatively unreactive. Fluorinated and iodinated alkanes are produced by indirect methods.

A wide variety of interesting and often useful compounds have one or more halogen atoms per molecule. For example, methane (CH_4) can react with chlorine (Cl_2), replacing one, two, three, or all four hydrogen atoms with Cl atoms. Several halogenated products derived from methane and ethane (CH_3CH_3) are listed in Table 12.8.1, along with some of their uses.

Table 12.8.1: Some Halogenated Hydrocarbons

Formula	Common Name	IUPAC Name	Some Important Uses
Derived from CH_4			
CH_3Cl	methyl chloride	chloromethane	refrigerant; the manufacture of silicones, methyl cellulose, and synthetic rubber
CH_2Cl_2	methylene chloride	dichloromethane	laboratory and industrial solvent
$CHCl_3$	chloroform	trichloromethane	industrial solvent
CCl_4	carbon tetrachloride	tetrachloromethane	dry-cleaning solvent and fire extinguishers (but no longer recommended for use)
$CBrF_3$	halon-1301	bromotrifluoromethane	fire extinguisher systems
CCl_3F	chlorofluorocarbon-11 (CFC-11)	trichlorofluoromethane	foaming plastics
CCl_2F_2	chlorofluorocarbon-12 (CFC-12)	dichlorodifluoromethane	refrigerant
Derived from CH_3CH_3			
CH_3CH_2Cl	ethyl chloride	chloroethane	local anesthetic
$ClCH_2CH_2Cl$	ethylene dichloride	1,2-dichloroethane	solvent for rubber
CCl_3CH_3	methylchloroform	1,1,1-trichloroethane	solvent for cleaning computer chips and molds for shaping plastics

Note To Your Health: Halogenated Hydrocarbons

Once widely used in consumer products, many chlorinated hydrocarbons are suspected carcinogens (cancer-causing substances) and also are known to cause severe liver damage. An example is carbon tetrachloride (CCl_4), once used as a dry-cleaning solvent and in fire extinguishers but no longer recommended for either use. Even in small amounts, its vapor can cause serious illness if exposure is prolonged. Moreover, it reacts with water at high temperatures to form deadly phosgene ($COCl_2$) gas, which makes the use of CCl_4 in fire extinguishers particularly dangerous.

Ethyl chloride, in contrast, is used as an external local anesthetic. When sprayed on the skin, it evaporates quickly, cooling the area enough to make it insensitive to pain. It can also be used as an emergency general anesthetic.

Bromine-containing compounds are widely used in fire extinguishers and as fire retardants on clothing and other materials. Because they too are toxic and have adverse effects on the environment, scientists are engaged in designing safer substitutes for them, as for many other halogenated compounds.

Note To Your Health: Chlorofluorocarbons and The Ozone Layer

Alkanes substituted with both fluorine (F) and chlorine (Cl) atoms have been used as the dispersing gases in aerosol cans, as foaming agents for plastics, and as refrigerants. Two of the best known of these chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) are listed in Table 12.8.2

Chlorofluorocarbons contribute to the greenhouse effect in the lower atmosphere. They also diffuse into the stratosphere, where they are broken down by ultraviolet (UV) radiation to release Cl atoms. These in turn break down the ozone (O_3) molecules that protect Earth from harmful UV radiation. Worldwide action has reduced the use of CFCs and related compounds. The CFCs and other Cl- or bromine (Br)-containing ozone-destroying compounds are being replaced with more benign substances. Hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), such as CH_2FCF_3, which have no Cl or Br to form radicals, are one alternative. Another is hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs), such as $CHCl_2CF_3$. HCFC molecules break down more readily in the troposphere, and fewer ozone-destroying molecules reach the stratosphere.

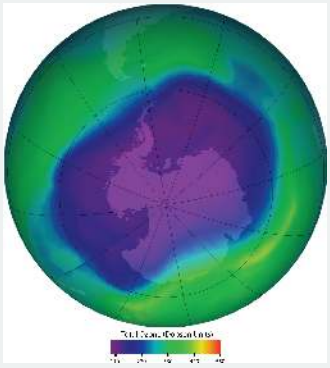


Figure 12.8.2 Ozone in the upper atmosphere shields Earth's surface from UV radiation from the sun, which can cause skin cancer in humans and is also harmful to other animals and to some plants. Ozone "holes" in the upper atmosphere (the gray, pink, and purple areas at the center) are large areas of substantial ozone depletion. They occur mainly over Antarctica from late August through early October and fill in about mid-November. Ozone depletion has also been noted over the Arctic regions. The largest ozone hole ever observed occurred on 24 September 2006. Source: Image courtesy of NASA, http://ozonewatch.gsfc.nasa.gov/daily.php?date=2006-09-24.

12.8: Reactions of Alkanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **12.7: Chemical Properties of Alkanes** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **20.2: Hydrocarbons** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **12.8: Halogenated Hydrocarbons** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

12.9: Cycloalkanes

Learning Objectives

- Identify the structures of cycloalkanes.

A **cyclic hydrocarbon** is a hydrocarbon in which the carbon chain joins to itself in a ring. A **cycloalkane** is a cyclic hydrocarbon in which all of the carbon-carbon bonds are single bonds and each carbon is bonded to two hydrogen atoms, they are saturated compounds. Cycloalkanes have the general formula C_nH_{2n}. The simplest of these cyclic hydrocarbons, cyclopropane, has the formula C_3H_6, which makes a three-carbon ring.

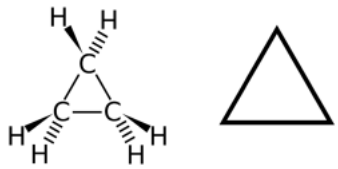
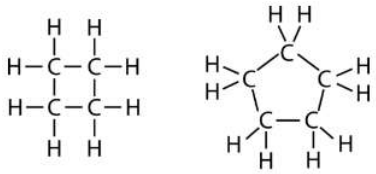


Figure 12.9.1: Cyclopropane is the simplest cycloalkane. Its highly strained geometry makes it rather unstable and highly reactive.

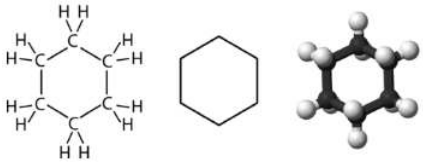
The structural formulas of cyclic hydrocarbons can be represented in multiple ways, two of which are shown above. Each atom can be shown as in the structure on the left from the figure above. A convenient shorthand is to omit the element symbols and only show the shape, as in the triangle on the right. Carbon atoms are understood to be the vertices of the triangle.

The carbon atoms in cycloalkanes have a bond angle of 109.5°. However, an examination of the cyclopropane structure shows that the triangular structure results in a $C-C-C$ bond angle of 60°. This deviation from the ideal angle is called ring strain and makes cyclopropane a fairly unstable and reactive molecule. Ring strain is decreased for cyclobutane, with a bond angle of 90°, but is still significant. Cyclopentane has a bond angle of about 108°. This minimal ring strain for cyclopentane makes it a more stable compound.



cyclobutane cyclopentane

Cyclohexane is a six-carbon cycloalkane, shown below.



All three of the depictions of cyclohexane above are somewhat misleading, because the molecule is not planar. In order to reduce the ring strain and attain a bond angle of approximately 109.5°, the molecule is actually puckered.

The ring structure in cycloalkanes also prevents rotation around the carbon–carbon bonds without breaking open the ring, thus they are more rigid and less flexible than acyclic alkanes. This property is called **restricted rotation**.

Note To Your Health: Cyclopropane as an Anesthetic

With its boiling point of −33°C, cyclopropane is a gas at room temperature. It is also a potent, quick-acting anesthetic with few undesirable side effects in the body. It is no longer used in surgery, however, because it forms explosive mixtures with air at nearly all concentrations.

12.9: Cycloalkanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

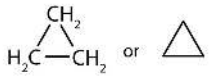
- **12.9: Cycloalkanes** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **25.6: Cyclic Hydrocarbons** by CK-12 Foundation is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

12.10: Drawing and Naming Cycloalkanes

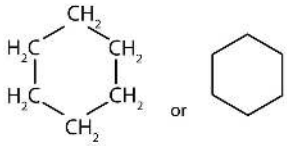
Learning Objectives

- To name cycloalkanes given their formulas and write formulas for these compounds given their names.

The cycloalkanes—cyclic hydrocarbons with only single bonds—are named by adding the prefix *cyclo-* to the name of the open-chain compound having the same number of carbon atoms as there are in the ring. Thus the name for the cyclic compound C_4H_8 is cyclobutane. The carbon atoms in cyclic compounds can be represented by *line-angle formulas* that result in regular geometric figures. Keep in mind, however, that each corner of the geometric figure represents a carbon atom plus as many hydrogen atoms as needed to give each carbon atom four bonds.



cyclopropane



cyclohexane

Some cyclic compounds have substituent groups attached. Example 12.10.1 interprets the name of a cycloalkane with a single substituent group.

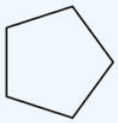
Example 12.10.1

Draw the structure for each compound.

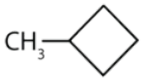
a. cyclopentane
b. methylcyclobutane

Solution

a. The name *cyclopentane* indicates a cyclic (cyclo) alkane with five (pent-) carbon atoms. It can be represented as a pentagon.



- The name *methylcyclobutane* indicates a cyclic alkane with four (but-) carbon atoms in the cyclic part. It can be represented as a square with a CH_3 group attached.



Exercise 12.10.1

Draw the structure for each compound.

a. cycloheptane
b. ethylcyclohexane

12.10: Drawing and Naming Cycloalkanes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **12.9: Cycloalkanes** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

13: Alkenes, Alkynes, and Aromatic Compounds

13.1: Alkenes and Alkynes
13.2: Naming Alkenes and Alkynes
13.3: The Structure of Alkenes- Cis-Trans Isomerism
13.4: Properties of Alkenes and Alkynes
13.5: Types of Organic Reactions
13.6: Reactions of Alkenes and Alkynes
13.7: Alkene Polymers
13.8: Aromatic Compounds and the Structure of Benzene
13.9: Naming Aromatic Compounds
13.10: Reactions of Aromatic Compounds

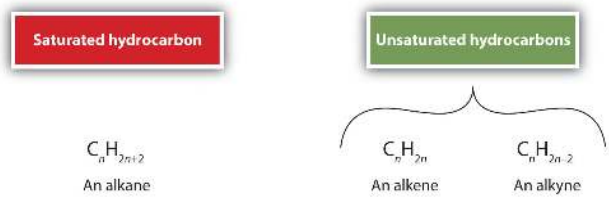
13: Alkenes, Alkynes, and Aromatic Compounds is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.1: Alkenes and Alkynes

Learning Objectives

- Identify the difference between saturated and unsaturated hydrocarbons.
- Describe the functional groups, alkenes and alkynes.

As noted before, **alkenes** are hydrocarbons with carbon-to-carbon double bonds ($R_2C{=}CR_2$) and **alkynes** are hydrocarbons with carbon-to-carbon triple bonds (R–C≡C–R). Collectively, they are called **unsaturated** hydrocarbons because they have fewer hydrogen atoms than does an alkane with the same number of carbon atoms, as is indicated in the following general formulas:



You have likely heard of *unsaturated fats*. These are complex organic molecules with long chains of carbon atoms, which contain at least one double bond between carbon atoms. Double and triple bonds give rise to a different geometry around the carbon atom that participates in them, leading to important differences in molecular shape and properties. The differing geometries are responsible for the different properties of unsaturated versus saturated fats.

Alkenes

Ethene, C_2H_4, is the simplest alkene. Each carbon atom in ethene, commonly called ethylene, has a trigonal planar structure. The second member of the series is propene (propylene) (Figure 13.1.1); the butene isomers follow in the series. Four carbon atoms in the chain of butene allows for the formation of isomers based on the position of the double bond, as well as a new form of isomerism.

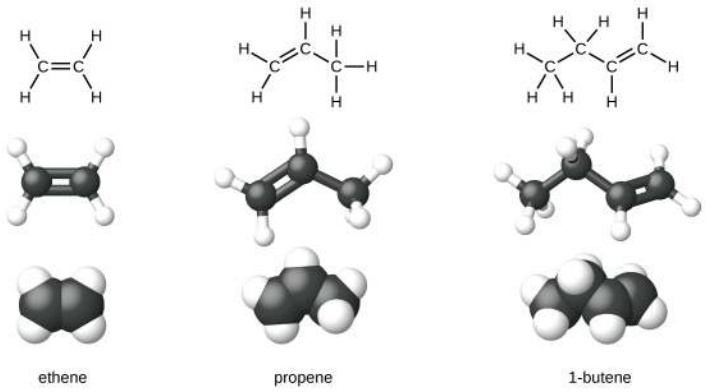


Figure 13.1.6: Expanded structures, ball-and-stick structures, and space-filling models for the alkenes ethene, propene, and 1-butene are shown.

Ethylene (the common industrial name for ethene) is a basic raw material in the production of polyethylene and other important compounds. Over 135 million tons of ethylene were produced worldwide in 2010 for use in the polymer, petrochemical, and plastic industries. Ethylene is produced industrially in a process called cracking, in which the long hydrocarbon chains in a petroleum mixture are broken into smaller molecules.

Alkynes

Hydrocarbon molecules with one or more triple bonds are called **alkynes**; they make up another series of unsaturated hydrocarbons. Two carbon atoms joined by a triple bond have bond angles of 180°, giving these types of bonds a linear shape.

The simplest member of the alkyne series is ethyne, C_2H_2, commonly called acetylene. The Lewis structure for ethyne, a linear molecule, is:

ethyne (acetylene)

> Acetylene is used in oxyacetylene torches for cutting and welding metals. The flame from such a torch can be very hot. Most acetylene, however, is converted to chemical intermediates that are used to make vinyl and acrylic plastics, fibers, resins, and a variety of other products.

Alkynes are similar to alkenes in both physical and chemical properties. For example, alkynes undergo many of the typical addition reactions of alkenes. The International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) names for alkynes parallel those of alkenes, except that the family ending is *-yne* rather than *-ene*.

13.1: Alkenes and Alkynes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **20.2: Hydrocarbons** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **13.6: Alkynes** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

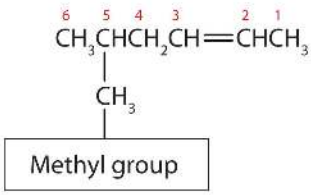
13.2: Naming Alkenes and Alkynes

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

Here are some basic rules for naming alkenes from the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC):

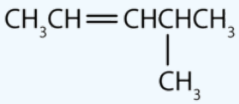
1. The longest chain of carbon atoms *containing the double bond* is considered the parent chain. It is named using the same stem as the alkane having the same number of carbon atoms but ends in *-ene* to identify it as an alkene. Thus the compound $CH_2{=}CHCH_3$ is *propene*.
2. If there are four or more carbon atoms in a chain, we must indicate the position of the double bond. The carbons atoms are numbered so that the first of the two that are doubly bonded is given the lower of the two possible numbers.The compound $CH_3CH{=}CHCH_2CH_3$, for example, has the double bond between the second and third carbon atoms. Its name is 2-pentene (not 3-pentene).
3. Substituent groups are named as with alkanes, and their position is indicated by a number. Thus, the structure below is 5-methyl-2-hexene. Note that the numbering of the parent chain is always done in such a way as to give the double bond the lowest number, even if that causes a substituent to have a higher number. *The double bond always has priority in numbering*.



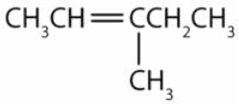
Example 13.2.1

Name each compound.

a.



b.



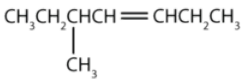
Solution

a. The longest chain containing the double bond has five carbon atoms, so the compound is a *pentene* (rule 1). To give the first carbon atom of the double bond the lowest number (rule 2), we number from the left, so the compound is a 2-pentene. There is a methyl group on the fourth carbon atom (rule 3), so the compound's name is 4-methyl-2-pentene.
b. The longest chain containing the double bond has five carbon atoms, so the parent compound is a *pentene* (rule 1). To give the first carbon atom of the double bond the lowest number (rule 2), we number from the left, so the compound is a 2-pentene. There is a methyl group on the third carbon atom (rule 3), so the compound's name is 3-methyl-2-pentene.

Exercise 13.2.1

Name each compound.

1. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH{=}CHCH_3$

- 

Just as there are cycloalkanes, there are *cycloalkenes*. These compounds are named like alkenes, but with the prefix *cyclo-* attached to the beginning of the parent alkene name.

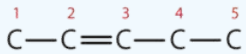
Example 13.2.2

Draw the structure for each compound.

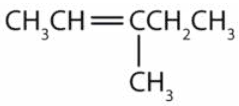
1. 3-methyl-2-pentene
2. cyclohexene

Solution

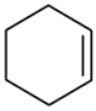
1. First write the parent chain of five carbon atoms: C–C–C–C–C. Then add the double bond between the second and third carbon atoms:



Now place the methyl group on the third carbon atom and add enough hydrogen atoms to give each carbon atom a total of four bonds.



- First, consider what each of the three parts of the name means. *Cyclo* means a ring compound, *hex* means 6 carbon atoms, and *-ene* means a double bond.



Exercise 13.2.2

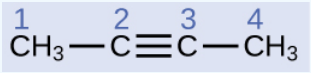
Draw the structure for each compound.

a. 2-ethyl-1-hexene
b. cyclopentene

The IUPAC nomenclature for alkynes is similar to that for alkenes except that the suffix *-yne* is used to indicate a triple bond in the chain. For example, $CH_3CH_2C \equiv CH$ is called 1-butyne.

Example 13.2.6: Structure of Alkynes

Describe the geometry and hybridization of the carbon atoms in the following molecule:

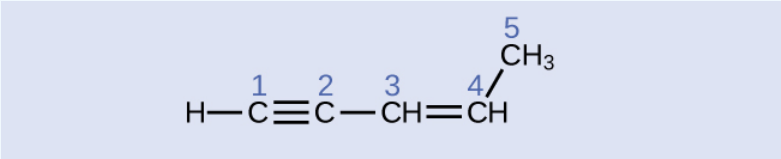


Solution

Carbon atoms 1 and 4 have four single bonds and are thus tetrahedral with sp^3 hybridization. Carbon atoms 2 and 3 are involved in the triple bond, so they have linear geometries and would be classified as *sp* hybrids.

Exercise 13.2.6

Identify the hybridization and bond angles at the carbon atoms in the molecule shown:



Answer

carbon 1: *sp*, 180°; carbon 2: *sp*, 180°; carbon 3: sp^2, 120°; carbon 4: sp^2, 120°; carbon 5: sp^3, 109.5°

13.2: Naming Alkenes and Alkynes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **13.1: Alkenes- Structures and Names** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **20.2: Hydrocarbons** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

13.3: The Structure of Alkenes- Cis-Trans Isomerism

Learning Objectives

- Recognize that alkenes that can exist as cis-trans isomers.
- Classify isomers as cis or trans.
- Draw structures for cis-trans isomers given their names.

There is free rotation about the carbon-to-carbon single bonds (C–C) in alkanes. In contrast, the structure of alkenes requires that the carbon atoms of a double bond and the two atoms bonded to each carbon atom all lie in a single plane, and that each doubly bonded carbon atom lies in the center of a triangle. This part of the molecule's structure is rigid; rotation about doubly bonded carbon atoms is *not* possible without rupturing the bond. Look at the two chlorinated hydrocarbons in Figure 13.3.1.

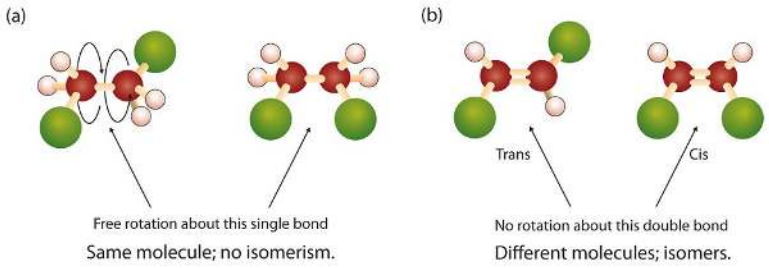


***Figure* 13.3.1** *: Rotation about Bonds. In 1,2-dichloroethane (a), free rotation about the C–C bond allows the two structures to be interconverted by a twist of one end relative to the other. In 1,2-dichloroethene (b), restricted rotation about the double bond means that the relative positions of substituent groups above or below the double bond are significant.*

In 1,2-dichloroethane (part (a) of Figure 13.3.1), there is free rotation about the C–C bond. The two models shown represent exactly the same molecule; they are *not* isomers. You can draw structural formulas that look different, but if you bear in mind the possibility of this free rotation about single bonds, you should recognize that these two structures represent the same molecule:

In 1,2-dichloroethene (Figure 13.3.1*b*), however, restricted rotation about the double bond means that the relative positions of substituent groups above or below the double bond become significant. This leads to a special kind of isomerism. The isomer in which the two chlorine (Cl) atoms lie on the same side of the molecule is called the cis isomer (Latin *cis*, meaning "on this side") and is named cis-1,2-dichloroethene. The isomer with the two Cl atoms on opposite sides of the molecule is the trans isomer (Latin *trans*, meaning "across") and is named *trans*-1,2-dichloroethene. These two compounds are cis-trans isomers (or geometric isomers), compounds that have different configurations (groups permanently in different places in space) because of the presence of a rigid structure in their molecule.

Consider the alkene with the condensed structural formula $CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3$. We could name it 2-butene, but there are actually two such compounds; the double bond results in cis-trans isomerism (Figure 13.3.2).

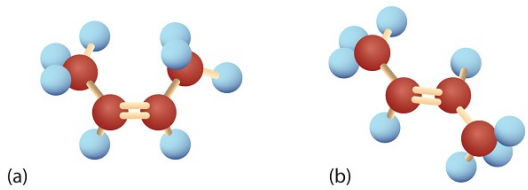


Figure 13.3.2: Ball-and-Spring Models of (a) Cis-2-Butene and (b) Trans-2-Butene. Cis-trans isomers have different physical, chemical, and physiological properties.

Cis-2-butene has both methyl groups on the same side of the molecule. *Trans*-2-butene has the methyl groups on opposite sides of the molecule. Their structural formulas are as follows:

Figure* 13.3.3: Models of (left) Cis-2-Butene and (right) Trans-2-Butene.*

Note, however, that the presence of a double bond does **not** necessarily lead to cis-trans isomerism (Figure 13.3.4). We can draw two *seemingly* different propenes:

Figure* 13.3.4: Different views of the propene molecule (flip vertically). These are not isomers.*

However, these two structures are not really different from each other. If you could pick up either molecule from the page and flip it over top to bottom, you would see that the two formulas are identical. Thus there are two requirements for cis-trans isomerism:

1. Rotation must be restricted in the molecule.
2. There must be **two nonidentical groups** on **each** doubly bonded carbon atom.

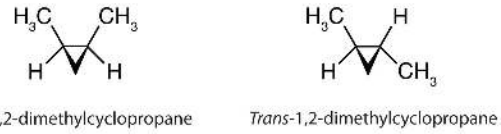
In these propene structures, the second requirement for cis-trans isomerism is not fulfilled. One of the doubly bonded carbon atoms does have two different groups attached, but the rules require that *both* carbon atoms have two different groups. In general, the following statements hold true in cis-trans isomerism:

- Alkenes with a $C{=}CH_2$ unit do not exist as cis-trans isomers.
- Alkenes with a $C{=}CR_2$ unit, where the two R groups are the same, do not exist as cis-trans isomers.
- Alkenes of the type R–CH=CH–R can exist as cis and trans isomers; cis if the two R groups are on the same side of the carbon-to-carbon double bond, and trans if the two R groups are on opposite sides of the carbon-to-carbon double bond.

Advanced Note: E/Z Isomerization

If a molecule has a C=C bond with one non-hydrogen group attached to each of the carbons, cis/trans nomenclature descried above is enough to describe it. However, if you have three different groups (or four), then the cis/trans approach is insufficient to describe the different isomers, since we do not know which two of the three groups are being described. For example, if you have a C=C bond, with a methyl group and a bromine on one carbon , and an ethyl group on the other, it is neither trans nor cis, since it is not clear whether the ethyl group is trans to the bromine or the methyl. This is addressed with a more advanced E/Z nomenclature discussed elsewhere.

Cis-trans isomerism also occurs in cyclic compounds. In ring structures, groups are unable to rotate about any of the ring carbon–carbon bonds. Therefore, groups can be either on the same side of the ring (cis) or on opposite sides of the ring (trans). For our purposes here, we represent all cycloalkanes as planar structures, and we indicate the positions of the groups, either above or below the plane of the ring.



Example 13.3.1

Which compounds can exist as cis-trans (geometric) isomers? Draw them.

1. CHCl=CHBr
2. $CH_2{=}CBrCH_3$
3. $(CH_3)_2C{=}CHCH_2CH_3$
4. $CH_3CH{=}CHCH_2CH_3$

Solution

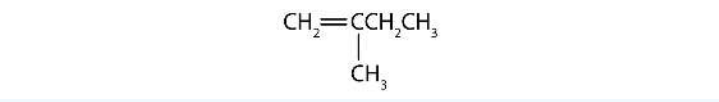
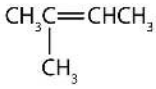
All four structures have a double bond and thus meet rule 1 for cis-trans isomerism.

1. This compound meets rule 2; it has two nonidentical groups on *each* carbon atom (H and Cl on one and H and Br on the other). It exists as both cis and trans isomers:

- This compound has two hydrogen atoms on one of its doubly bonded carbon atoms; it fails rule 2 and does not exist as cis and trans isomers.
- This compound has two methyl (CH_3) groups on one of its doubly bonded carbon atoms. It fails rule 2 and does not exist as cis and trans isomers.
- This compound meets rule 2; it has two nonidentical groups on *each* carbon atom and exists as both cis and trans isomers:

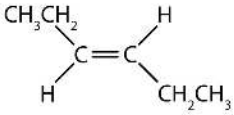
? Exercise 13.3.1

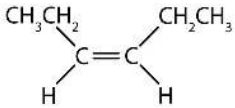
Which compounds can exist as cis-trans isomers? Draw them.

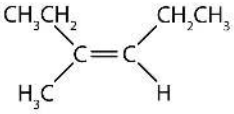
a. $CH_2{=}CHCH_2CH_2CH_3$
b. $CH_3CH{=}CHCH_2CH_3$
c. $CH_3CH_2CH{=}CHCH_2CH_3$
d. 
- 

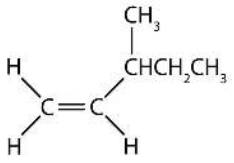
Concept Review Exercises

1. What are cis-trans (geometric) isomers? What two types of compounds can exhibit cis-trans isomerism?
2. Classify each compound as a cis isomer, a trans isomer, or neither.

a. 

b. 

c. 

d. 

Answers

1. Cis-trans isomers are compounds that have different configurations (groups permanently in different places in space) because of the presence of a rigid structure in their molecule. Alkenes and cyclic compounds can exhibit cis-trans isomerism.
2. a. trans (the two hydrogen atoms are on opposite sides)
   b. cis (the two hydrogen atoms are on the same side, as are the two ethyl groups)
   c. cis (the two ethyl groups are on the same side)
   d. neither (fliping the bond does not change the molecule. There are no isomers for this molecule)

13.3: The Structure of Alkenes- Cis-Trans Isomerism is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **13.2: Cis-Trans Isomers (Geometric Isomers)** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

13.4: Properties of Alkenes and Alkynes

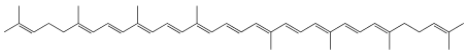
Learning Objectives

- To identify the physical properties of alkenes and describe trends in these properties.

The physical properties of alkenes are similar to those of the alkanes. The table at the start of the chapter shows that the boiling points of straight-chain alkenes increase with increasing molar mass, just as with alkanes. For molecules with the same number of carbon atoms and the same general shape, the boiling points usually differ only slightly, just as we would expect for substances whose molar mass differs by only 2 u (equivalent to two hydrogen atoms). Like other hydrocarbons, the alkenes are insoluble in water but soluble in organic solvents.

Looking Closer: Environmental Note

Alkenes occur widely in nature. Ripening fruits and vegetables give off ethylene, which triggers further ripening. Fruit processors artificially introduce ethylene to hasten the ripening process; exposure to as little as 0.1 mg of ethylene for 24 h can ripen 1 kg of tomatoes. Unfortunately, this process does not exactly duplicate the ripening process, and tomatoes picked green and treated this way don't taste much like vine-ripened tomatoes fresh from the garden.



The bright red color of tomatoes is due to lycopene—a polyene.

Other alkenes that occur in nature include 1-octene, a constituent of lemon oil, and octadecene ($C_{18}H_{36}$) found in fish liver. Dienes (two double bonds) and polyenes (three or more double bonds) are also common. Butadiene ($CH_2{=}CHCH{=}CH_2$) is found in coffee. Lycopene and the carotenes are isomeric polyenes ($C_{40}H_{56}$) that give the attractive red, orange, and yellow colors to watermelons, tomatoes, carrots, and other fruits and vegetables. Vitamin A, essential to good vision, is derived from a carotene. The world would be a much less colorful place without alkenes.

13.4: Properties of Alkenes and Alkynes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **13.3: Physical Properties of Alkenes** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

13.5: Types of Organic Reactions

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

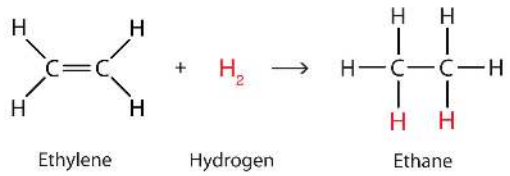
13.5: Types of Organic Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.6: Reactions of Alkenes and Alkynes

Learning Objectives

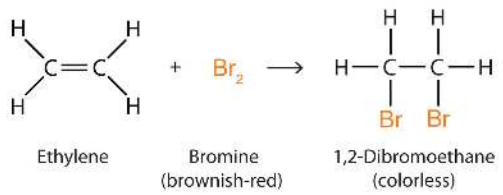
- To write equations for the addition reactions of alkenes with hydrogen, halogens, and water

Alkenes are valued mainly for addition reactions, in which one of the bonds in the double bond is broken. Each of the carbon atoms in the bond can then attach another atom or group while remaining joined to each other by a single bond. Perhaps the simplest addition reaction is hydrogenation—a reaction with hydrogen (H_2) in the presence of a catalyst such as nickel (Ni) or platinum (Pt).

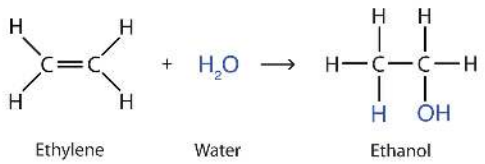


The product is an alkane having the same carbon skeleton as the alkene.

Alkenes also readily undergo halogenation—the addition of halogens. Indeed, the reaction with bromine (Br_2) can be used to test for alkenes. Bromine solutions are brownish red. When we add a Br_2 solution to an alkene, the color of the solution disappears because the alkene reacts with the bromine:



Another important addition reaction is that between an alkene and water to form an alcohol. This reaction, called hydration, requires a catalyst—usually a strong acid, such as sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4):



The hydration reaction is discussed later, where we deal with this reaction in the synthesis of alcohols.

Example 13.6.1

Write the equation for the reaction between $CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3$ and each substance.

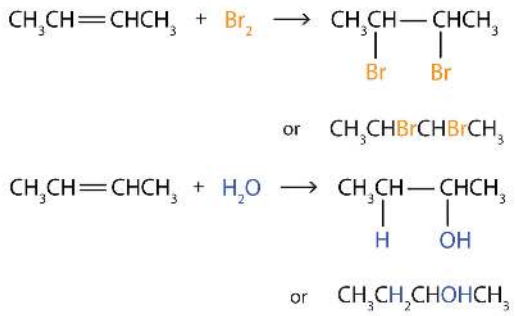
a. H_2 (Ni catalyst)
b. Br_2
c. H_2O (H_2SO_4 catalyst)

Solution

In each reaction, the reagent adds across the double bond.

a. $CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3 + H_2 \longrightarrow CH_3\underset{H}{CH}{-}\underset{H}{CH}CH_3$

or $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$

- 

-

? Exercise 13.6.1

Write the equation for each reaction.

a. $CH_3CH_2CH{=}CH_2$ with H_2 (Ni catalyst)
b. $CH_3CH{=}CH_2$ with Cl_2
c. $CH_3CH_2CH{=}CHCH_2CH_3$ with H_2O (H_2SO_4 catalyst)

13.6: Reactions of Alkenes and Alkynes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **13.4: Chemical Properties of Alkenes** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

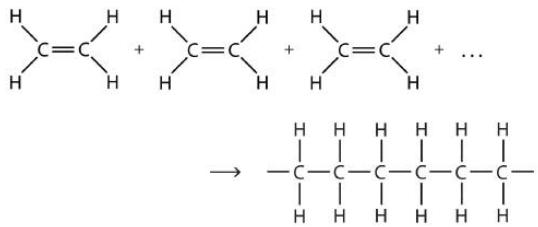
13.7: Alkene Polymers

Learning Objectives

- To draw structures for monomers that can undergo addition polymerization and for four-monomer-unit sections of an addition polymer.

The most important commercial reactions of alkenes are *polymerizations*, reactions in which small molecules, referred to in general as monomers (from the Greek *monos*, meaning "one," and *meros*, meaning "parts"), are assembled into giant molecules referred to as polymers (from the Greek *poly*, meaning "many," and *meros*, meaning "parts"). A polymer is as different from its monomer as a long strand of spaghetti is from a tiny speck of flour. For example, polyethylene, the familiar waxy material used to make plastic bags, is made from the monomer ethylene—a gas.

There are two general types of polymerization reactions: addition polymerization and condensation polymerization. In addition polymerization, the monomers add to one another in such a way that the polymer contains all the atoms of the starting monomers. Ethylene molecules are joined together in long chains. The polymerization can be represented by the reaction of a few monomer units:



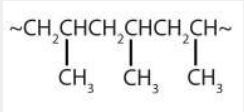
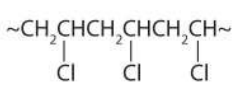
The bond lines extending at the ends in the formula of the product indicate that the structure extends for many units in each direction. Notice that all the atoms—two carbon atoms and four hydrogen atoms—of each monomer molecule are incorporated into the polymer structure. Because displays such as the one above are cumbersome, the polymerization is often abbreviated as follows:

$$n\mathrm{CH_2{=}CH_2} \rightarrow \left[\mathrm{CH_2CH_2}\right]_n$$

> Many natural materials—such as proteins, cellulose and starch, and complex silicate minerals—are polymers. Artificial fibers, films, plastics, semisolid resins, and rubbers are also polymers. More than half the compounds produced by the chemical industry are synthetic polymers.

Some common addition polymers are listed in Table 13.7.1. Note that all the monomers have carbon-to-carbon double bonds. Many polymers are mundane (e.g., plastic bags, food wrap, toys, and tableware), but there are also polymers that conduct electricity, have amazing adhesive properties, or are stronger than steel but much lighter in weight.

Table 13.7.1*: Some Addition Polymers*

Monomer	Polymer	Polymer Name	Some Uses
$CH_2{=}CH_2$	$\sim CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2\sim$	polyethylene	plastic bags, bottles, toys, electrical insulation
$CH_2{=}CHCH_3$		polypropylene	carpeting, bottles, luggage, exercise clothing
$CH_2{=}CHCl$		polyvinyl chloride	bags for intravenous solutions, pipes, tubing, floor coverings
$CF_2{=}CF_2$	$\sim CF_2CF_2CF_2CF_2CF_2CF_2\sim$	polytetrafluoroethylene	nonstick coatings, electrical insulation

13.7: Alkene Polymers is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **13.5: Polymers** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

13.8: Aromatic Compounds and the Structure of Benzene

Learning Objectives

- To describe the bonding in benzene and the way typical reactions of benzene differ from those of the alkenes.

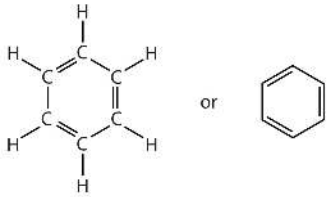
Next we consider a class of hydrocarbons with molecular formulas like those of unsaturated hydrocarbons, but which, unlike the alkenes, do not readily undergo addition reactions. These compounds comprise a distinct class, called aromatic hydrocarbons, with unique structures and properties. We start with the simplest of these compounds. Benzene (C_6H_6) is of great commercial importance, but it also has noteworthy health effects.

The formula C_6H_6 seems to indicate that benzene has a high degree of unsaturation. (Hexane, the saturated hydrocarbon with six carbon atoms has the formula C_6H_{14}—eight more hydrogen atoms than benzene.) However, despite the seeming low level of saturation, benzene is rather unreactive. It does not, for example, react readily with bromine, which, is a test for unsaturation.

Note

Benzene is a liquid that smells like gasoline, boils at 80°C, and freezes at 5.5°C. It is the aromatic hydrocarbon produced in the largest volume. It was formerly used to decaffeinate coffee and was a significant component of many consumer products, such as paint strippers, rubber cements, and home dry-cleaning spot removers. It was removed from many product formulations in the 1950s, but others continued to use benzene in products until the 1970s when it was associated with leukemia deaths. Benzene is still important in industry as a precursor in the production of plastics (such as Styrofoam and nylon), drugs, detergents, synthetic rubber, pesticides, and dyes. It is used as a solvent for such things as cleaning and maintaining printing equipment and for adhesives such as those used to attach soles to shoes. Benzene is a natural constituent of petroleum products, but because it is a known carcinogen, its use as an additive in gasoline is now limited.

To explain the surprising properties of benzene, chemists suppose the molecule has a cyclic, hexagonal, planar structure of six carbon atoms with one hydrogen atom bonded to each. We can write a structure with alternate single and double bonds, either as a full structural formula or as a line-angle formula:



However, these structures do not explain the unique properties of benzene. Furthermore, experimental evidence indicates that all the carbon-to-carbon bonds in benzene are equivalent, and the molecule is unusually stable. Chemists often represent benzene as a hexagon with an inscribed circle:

The inner circle indicates that the valence electrons are shared equally by all six carbon atoms (that is, the electrons are *delocalized*, or spread out, over all the carbon atoms). It is understood that each corner of the hexagon is occupied by one carbon atom, and each carbon atom has one hydrogen atom attached to it. Any other atom or groups of atoms substituted for a hydrogen atom must be shown bonded to a particular corner of the hexagon. We use this modern symbolism, but many scientists still use the earlier structure with alternate double and single bonds.

To Your Health: Benzene and Us

Most of the benzene used commercially comes from petroleum. It is employed as a starting material for the production of detergents, drugs, dyes, insecticides, and plastics. Once widely used as an organic solvent, benzene is now known to have both short- and long-term toxic effects. The inhalation of large concentrations can cause nausea and even death due to respiratory or heart failure, while repeated exposure leads to a progressive disease in which the ability of the bone marrow to make new blood cells is eventually destroyed. This results in a condition called *aplastic anemia*, in which there is a decrease in the numbers of both the red and white blood cells.

13.8: Aromatic Compounds and the Structure of Benzene is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **13.7: Aromatic Compounds- Benzene** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

13.9: Naming Aromatic Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Recognize aromatic compounds from structural formulas.
- Name aromatic compounds given formulas.
- Write formulas for aromatic compounds given their names.

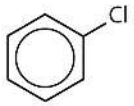
Historically, benzene-like substances were called aromatic hydrocarbons because they had distinctive aromas. Today, an aromatic compound is any compound that contains a benzene ring or has certain benzene-like properties (but not necessarily a strong aroma). You can recognize the aromatic compounds in this text by the presence of one or more benzene rings in their structure. Some representative aromatic compounds and their uses are listed in Table 13.9.1, where the benzene ring is represented as C_6H_5.

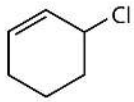
Table 13.9.1: *Some Representative Aromatic Compounds*

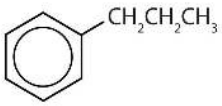
Name	Structure	Typical Uses
aniline	$C_6H_5–NH_2$	starting material for the synthesis of dyes, drugs, resins, varnishes, perfumes; solvent; vulcanizing rubber
benzoic acid	$C_6H_5–COOH$	food preservative; starting material for the synthesis of dyes and other organic compounds; curing of tobacco
bromobenzene	$C_6H_5–Br$	starting material for the synthesis of many other aromatic compounds; solvent; motor oil additive
nitrobenzene	$C_6H_5–NO_2$	starting material for the synthesis of aniline; solvent for cellulose nitrate; in soaps and shoe polish
phenol	$C_6H_5–OH$	disinfectant; starting material for the synthesis of resins, drugs, and other organic compounds
toluene	$C_6H_5–CH_3$	solvent; gasoline octane booster; starting material for the synthesis of benzoic acid, benzaldehyde, and many other organic compounds

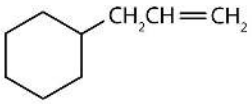
Example 13.9.1

Which compounds are aromatic?

1. 

- 

- 

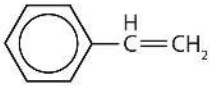
- 

Solution

1. The compound has a benzene ring (with a chlorine atom substituted for one of the hydrogen atoms); it is aromatic.
2. The compound is cyclic, but it does not have a benzene ring; it is not aromatic.
3. The compound has a benzene ring (with a propyl group substituted for one of the hydrogen atoms); it is aromatic.
4. The compound is cyclic, but it does not have a benzene ring; it is not aromatic.

? Exercise 13.9.1

Which compounds are aromatic?

1. 

-

-

In the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) system, aromatic hydrocarbons are named as derivatives of benzene. Figure 13.9.1 shows four examples. In these structures, it is immaterial whether the single substituent is written at the top, side, or bottom of the ring: a hexagon is symmetrical, and therefore all positions are equivalent.

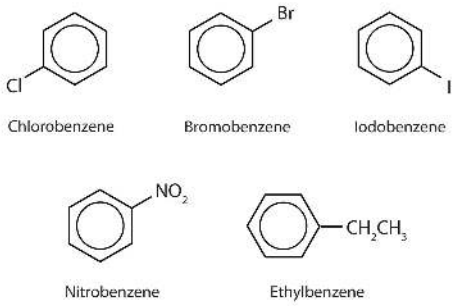


Figure 13.9.1: Some Benzene Derivatives. These compounds are named in the usual way with the group that replaces a hydrogen atom named as a substituent group: Cl as chloro, Br as bromo, I as iodo, NO_2 as nitro, and CH_3CH_2 as ethyl.

Although some compounds are referred to exclusively by IUPAC names, some are more frequently denoted by common names, as is indicated in Table 13.9.1.

When there is more than one substituent, the corners of the hexagon are no longer equivalent, so we must designate the relative positions. There are three possible disubstituted benzenes, and we can use numbers to distinguish them (Figure 13.9.2). We start numbering at the carbon atom to which one of the groups is attached and count toward the carbon atom that bears the other substituent group by the shortest path.

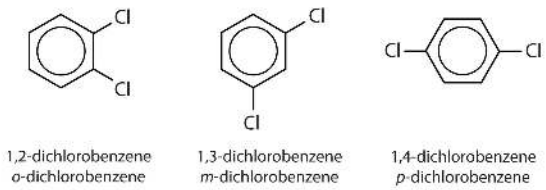
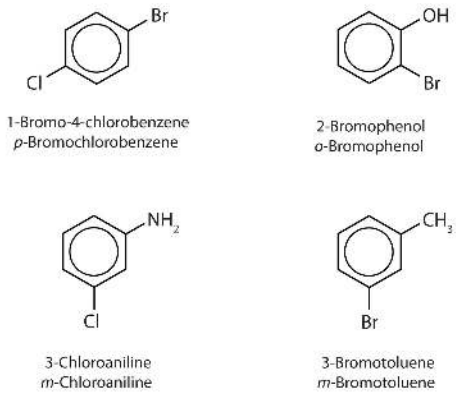


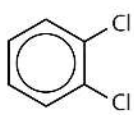
Figure 13.9.2: The Three Isomeric Dichlorobenzenes

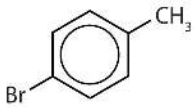
In Figure 13.9.2, common names are also used: the prefix *ortho* (*o*-) for 1,2-disubstitution, *meta* (*m*-) for 1,3-disubstitution, and *para* (*p*-) for 1,4-disubstitution. The substituent names are listed in alphabetical order. The first substituent is given the lowest number. When a common name is used, the carbon atom that bears the group responsible for the name is given the number 1:

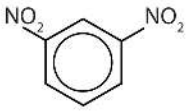


Example 13.9.2

Name each compound using both the common name and the IUPAC name.

1. 

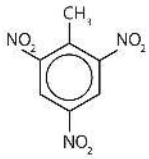
- 

- 

Solution

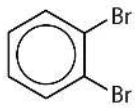
1. The benzene ring has two chlorine atoms (dichloro) in the first and second positions. The compound is *o*-dichlorobenzene or 1,2-dichlorobenzene.
2. The benzene ring has a methyl (CH_3) group. The compound is therefore named as a derivative of toluene. The bromine atom is on the fourth carbon atom, counting from the methyl group. The compound is *p*-bromotoluene or 4-bromotoluene.
3. The benzene ring has two nitro (NO_2) groups in the first and third positions. It is *m*-dinitrobenzene or 1,3-dinitrobenzene.

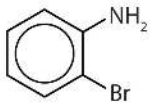
Note: The nitro (NO_2) group is a common substituent in aromatic compounds. Many nitro compounds are explosive, most notably 2,4,6-trinitrotoluene (TNT).

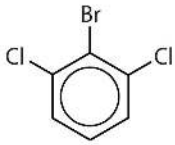


? Exercise 13.9.2

Name each compound using both the common name and the IUPAC name.

1. 

- 

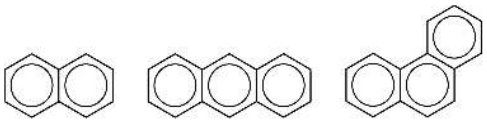
- 

Sometimes an aromatic group is found as a substituent bonded to a nonaromatic entity or to another aromatic ring. The group of atoms remaining when a hydrogen atom is removed from an aromatic compound is called an aryl group. The most common aryl group is derived from benzene (C_6H_6) by removing one hydrogen atom (C_6H_5) and is called a *phenyl* group, from *pheno*, an old name for benzene.

Phenyl group 2-Phenylheptane

Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons

Some common aromatic hydrocarbons consist of fused benzene rings—rings that share a common side. These compounds are called polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs).



Naphthalene Anthracene Phenanthrene

The three examples shown here are colorless, crystalline solids generally obtained from coal tar. Naphthalene has a pungent odor and is used in mothballs. Anthracene is used in the manufacture of certain dyes. Steroids, a large group of naturally occurring substances, contain the phenanthrene structure.

To Your Health: Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons and Cancer

The intense heating required for distilling coal tar results in the formation of PAHs. For many years, it has been known that workers in coal-tar refineries are susceptible to a type of skin cancer known as tar cancer. Investigations have shown that a number of PAHs are carcinogens. One of the most active carcinogenic compounds, benzopyrene, occurs in coal tar and has also been isolated from cigarette smoke, automobile exhaust gases, and charcoal-broiled steaks. It is estimated that more than 1,000 t of benzopyrene are

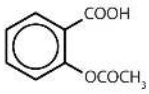
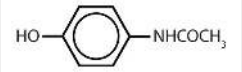
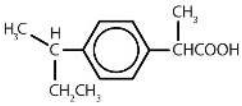
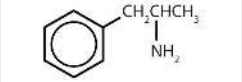
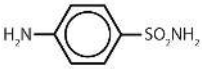
emitted into the air over the United States each year. Only a few milligrams of benzopyrene per kilogram of body weight are required to induce cancer in experimental animals.

Biologically Important Compounds with Benzene Rings

Substances containing the benzene ring are common in both animals and plants, although they are more abundant in the latter. Plants can synthesize the benzene ring from carbon dioxide, water, and inorganic materials. Animals cannot synthesize it, but they are dependent on certain aromatic compounds for survival and therefore must obtain them from food. Phenylalanine, tyrosine, and tryptophan (essential amino acids) and vitamins K, B_2 (riboflavin), and B_9 (folic acid) all contain the benzene ring. Many important drugs, a few of which are shown in Table 13.9.2, also feature a benzene ring.

> So far we have studied only aromatic compounds with carbon-containing rings. However, many cyclic compounds have an element other than carbon atoms in the ring. These compounds, called *heterocyclic compounds*, are discussed later. Some of these are heterocyclic aromatic compounds.

Table 13.9.2: Some Drugs That Contain a Benzene Ring

Name	Structure
aspirin	
acetaminophen	
ibuprofen	
amphetamine	
sulfanilamide	

13.9: Naming Aromatic Compounds is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **13.8: Structure and Nomenclature of Aromatic Compounds** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

13.10: Reactions of Aromatic Compounds

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

13.10: Reactions of Aromatic Compounds is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

14: Some Compounds with Oxygen, Sulfur, or a Halogen

14.1: Alcohols, Phenols, and Ethers
14.2: Some Common Alcohols
14.3: Naming Alcohols
14.4: Properties of Alcohols
14.5: Reactions of Alcohols
14.6: Phenols
14.7: Acidity of Alcohols and Phenols
14.8: Ethers
14.9: Thiols and Disulfides
14.10: Halogen-Containing Compounds

14: Some Compounds with Oxygen, Sulfur, or a Halogen is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.1: Alcohols, Phenols, and Ethers

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

14.1: Alcohols, Phenols, and Ethers is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.2: Some Common Alcohols

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

14.2: Some Common Alcohols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.3: Naming Alcohols

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

14.3: Naming Alcohols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.4: Properties of Alcohols

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

14.4: Properties of Alcohols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.5: Reactions of Alcohols

Learning Objectives

1. Give two major types of reactions of alcohols.
2. Describe the result of the oxidation of a primary alcohol.
3. Describe the result of the oxidation of a secondary alcohol.

Chemical reactions in alcohols occur mainly at the functional group, but some involve hydrogen atoms attached to the OH-bearing carbon atom or to an adjacent carbon atom. Of the three major kinds of alcohol reactions, which are summarized in Figure 14.5.1, two—dehydration and oxidation—are considered here. The third reaction type—esterification—is covered elsewhere.

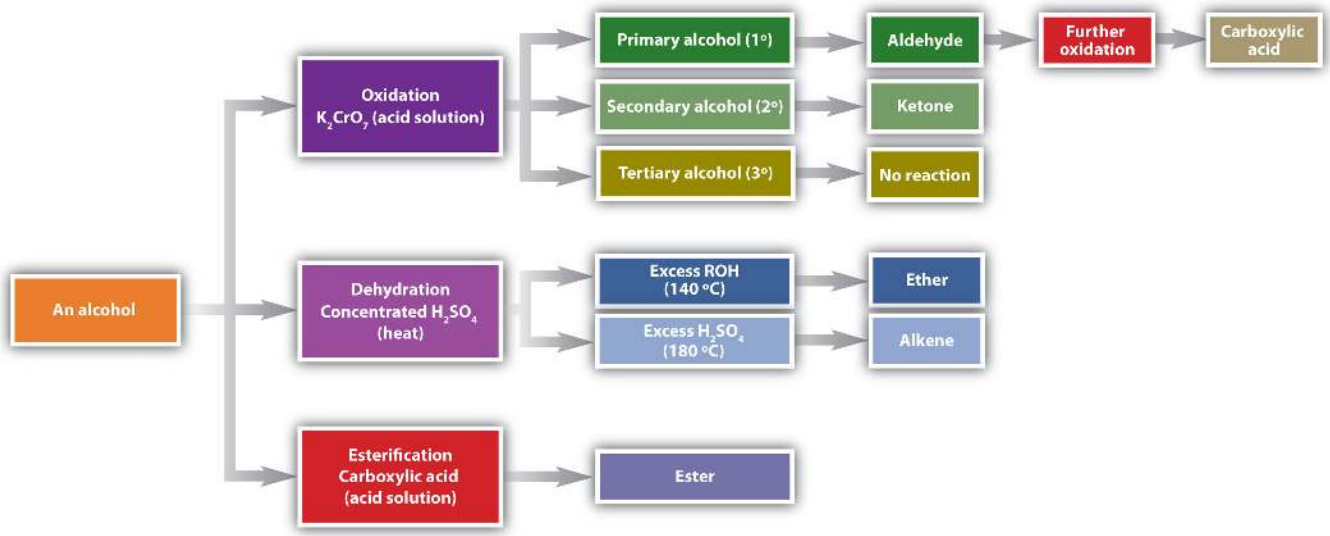


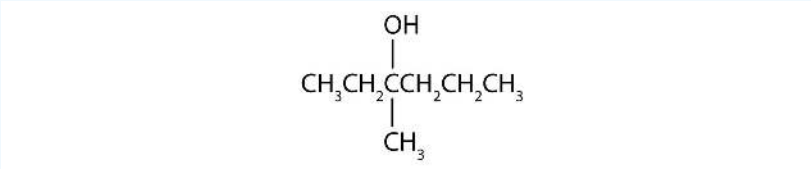
Figure 14.5.1: Reactions of Alcohols. Oxidation and dehydration of alcohols are considered here.

Solution

The first step is to recognize the class of each alcohol as primary, secondary, or tertiary.

Exercise 14.5.1

Write an equation for the oxidation of each alcohol. Use [O] above the arrow to indicate an oxidizing agent. If no reaction occurs, write "no reaction" after the arrow.

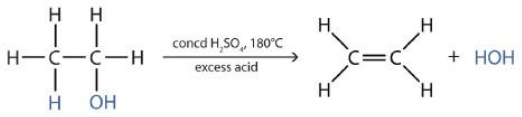
1. 

Summary

Alcohols can be dehydrated to form either alkenes (higher temperature, excess acid) or ethers (lower temperature, excess alcohol). Primary alcohols are oxidized to form aldehydes. Secondary alcohols are oxidized to form ketones. Tertiary alcohols are not readily oxidized.

- ## Dehydration

  As noted in Figure 14.5.1, an alcohol undergoes dehydration in the presence of a catalyst to form an alkene and water. The reaction removes the OH group from the alcohol carbon atom and a hydrogen atom from an adjacent carbon atom in the same molecule:



Ethanol Ethylene

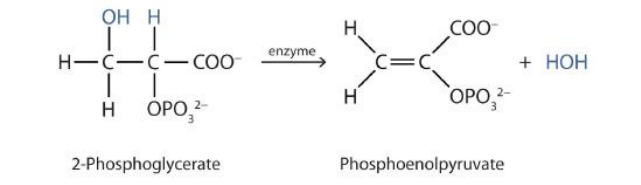
Under the proper conditions, it is possible for the dehydration to occur between *two* alcohol molecules. The entire OH group of one molecule and only the hydrogen atom of the OH group of the second molecule are removed. The two ethyl groups attached to an oxygen atom form an ether molecule.

$$CH_3CH_2OH + HOCH_2CH_3 \xrightarrow[\text{140°C, excess ethanol}]{\text{concd } H_2SO_4} CH_3CH_2{-}O{-}CH_2CH_3 + H_2O$$

Two molecules of ethanol Diethyl ether

(Ethers are discussed in elsewhere) Thus, depending on conditions, one can prepare either alkenes or ethers by the dehydration of alcohols.

Both dehydration and hydration reactions occur continuously in cellular metabolism, with enzymes serving as catalysts and at a temperature of about 37°C. The following reaction occurs in the "Embden–Meyerhof" pathway



2-Phosphoglycerate Phosphoenolpyruvate

Although the participating compounds are complex, the reaction is the same: elimination of water from the starting material. The idea is that if you know the chemistry of a particular functional group, you know the chemistry of hundreds of different compounds.

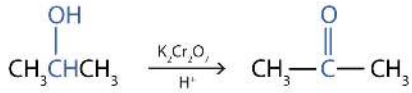
Oxidation

Primary and secondary alcohols are readily oxidized. We saw earlier how methanol and ethanol are oxidized by liver enzymes to form aldehydes. Because a variety of oxidizing agents can bring about oxidation, we can indicate an oxidizing agent without specifying a particular one by writing an equation with the symbol [O] above the arrow. For example, we write the oxidation of ethanol—a primary alcohol—to form acetaldehyde—an aldehyde—as follows:

$$CH_3CH_2OH \xrightarrow{[O]} CH_3CH{=}O$$

Ethanol (a primary alcohol) Acetaldehyde (an aldehyde)

We shall see that aldehydes are even more easily oxidized than alcohols and yield carboxylic acids. Secondary alcohols are oxidized to *ketones*. The oxidation of isopropyl alcohol by potassium dichromate ($K_2Cr_2O_7$) gives acetone, the simplest ketone:



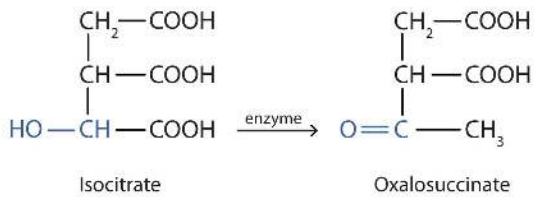
Isopropyl alcohol (a secondary alcohol) Acetone (a ketone)

Unlike aldehydes, ketones are relatively resistant to further oxidation, so no special precautions are required to isolate them as they form. Note that in oxidation of both primary (RCH_2OH) and secondary (R_2CHOH) alcohols, two hydrogen atoms are removed from the alcohol molecule, one from the OH group and other from the carbon atom that bears the OH group.

These reactions can also be carried out in the laboratory with chemical oxidizing agents. One such oxidizing agent is potassium dichromate. The balanced equation (showing only the species involved in the reaction) in this case is as follows:

$$8H^+ + Cr_2O_7^{2-} + 3CH_3CH_2OH \longrightarrow 3CH_3CHO + 2Cr^{3+} + 7H_2O$$

Alcohol oxidation is important in living organisms. Enzyme-controlled oxidation reactions provide the energy cells need to do useful work. One step in the metabolism of carbohydrates involves the oxidation of the secondary alcohol group in isocitric acid to a ketone group:



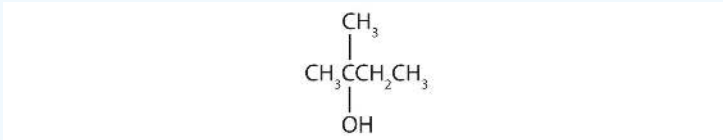
The overall type of reaction is the same as that in the conversion of isopropyl alcohol to acetone.

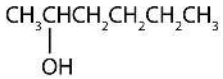
Tertiary alcohols (R_3COH) are resistant to oxidation because the carbon atom that carries the OH group does not have a hydrogen atom attached but is instead bonded to other carbon atoms. The oxidation reactions we have described involve the formation of a carbon-to-oxygen double bond. Thus, the carbon atom bearing the OH group must be able to release one of its attached atoms to form the double bond. The carbon-to-hydrogen bonding is easily broken under oxidative conditions, but carbon-to-carbon bonds are not. Therefore tertiary alcohols are not easily oxidized.

Example 14.5.1

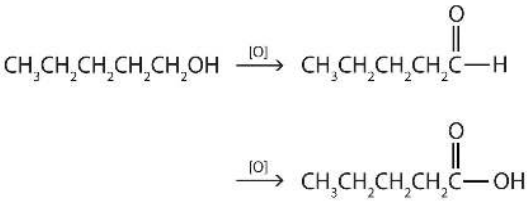
Write an equation for the oxidation of each alcohol. Use [O] above the arrow to indicate an oxidizing agent. If no reaction occurs, write "no reaction" after the arrow.

a. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$

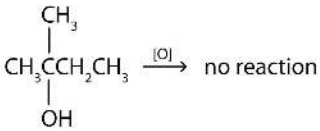
b. 

- 

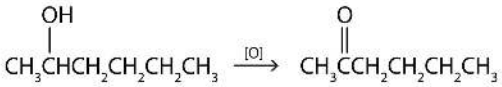
a. This alcohol has the OH group on a carbon atom that is attached to only *one* other carbon atom, so it is a primary alcohol. Oxidation forms first an aldehyde and further oxidation forms a carboxylic acid.

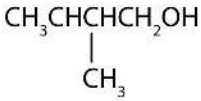


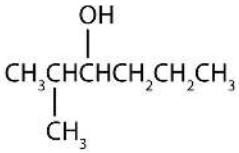
b. This alcohol has the OH group on a carbon atom that is attached to three other carbon atoms, so it is a tertiary alcohol. No reaction occurs.



c. This alcohol has the OH group on a carbon atom that is attached to two other carbon atoms, so it is a secondary alcohol; oxidation gives a ketone.

- 



- 

14.5: Reactions of Alcohols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **14.5: Reactions of Alcohols** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

14.6: Phenols

Learning Objectives

- To describe the structure and uses of some phenols

Compounds in which an OH group is attached directly to an aromatic ring are designated ArOH and called phenols. Phenols differ from alcohols in that they are slightly acidic in water. They react with aqueous sodium hydroxide (NaOH) to form salts.

$$\mathrm{ArOH(aq) + NaOH(aq) \rightarrow ArONa(aq) + H_2O}$$

The parent compound, C_6H_5OH, is itself called phenol. (An old name, emphasizing its slight acidity, was *carbolic acid*.) Phenol is a white crystalline compound that has a distinctive ("hospital smell") odor.

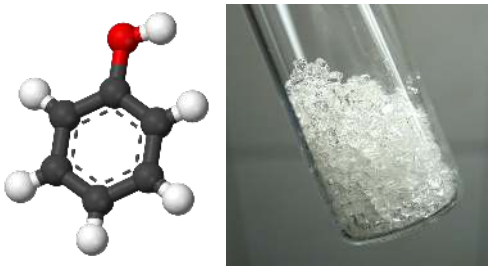


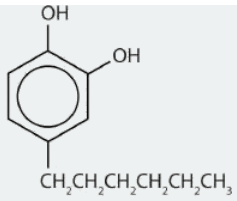
Figure* 14.6.1*: *(Left) Structure of Phenol (right) Approximately two grams of phenol in glass vial. Image used with permisison from Wikipedia*

To Your Health: Phenols and Us

Phenols are widely used as antiseptics (substances that kill microorganisms on living tissue) and as disinfectants (substances intended to kill microorganisms on inanimate objects such as furniture or floors). The first widely used antiseptic was phenol. Joseph Lister used it for antiseptic surgery in 1867. Phenol is toxic to humans, however, and can cause severe burns when applied to the skin. In the bloodstream, it is a systemic poison—that is, one that is carried to and affects all parts of the body. Its severe side effects led to searches for safer antiseptics, a number of which have been found.

An operation in 1753, painted by Gaspare Traversi, of a surgery before antiseptics were used.

One safer phenolic antiseptic is 4-hexylresorcinol (4-hexyl-1,3-dihydroxybenzene; resorcinol is the common name for 1,3-dihydroxybenzene, and 4-hexylresorcinol has a hexyl group on the fourth carbon atom of the resorcinol ring). It is much more powerful than phenol as a germicide and has fewer undesirable side effects. Indeed, it is safe enough to be used as the active ingredient in some mouthwashes and throat lozenges.



The compound 4-hexylresorcinol is mild enough to be used as the active ingredient in antiseptic preparations for use on the skin.

Summary

Phenols are compounds in which an OH group is attached directly to an aromatic ring. Many phenols are used as antiseptics.

14.6: Phenols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **14.7: Phenols** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

14.7: Acidity of Alcohols and Phenols

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

14.7: Acidity of Alcohols and Phenols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.8: Ethers

Learning Objectives

- Describe the structural difference between an alcohol and an ether that affects physical characteristics and reactivity of each.
- Name simple ethers.
- Describe the structure and uses of some ethers.

With the general formula ROR′, an ether may be considered a derivative of water in which both hydrogen atoms are replaced by alkyl or aryl groups. It may also be considered a derivative of an alcohol (ROH) in which the hydrogen atom of the OH group is been replaced by a second alkyl or aryl group:

$$\mathrm{HOH} \xrightarrow[\text{H atoms}]{\text{replace both}} \mathrm{ROR'} \xleftarrow[\text{of OH group}]{\text{replace H atom}} \mathrm{ROH}$$

Simple ethers have simple common names, formed from the names of the groups attached to oxygen atom, followed by the generic name *ether*. For example, CH_3–O–$CH_2CH_2CH_3$ is methyl propyl ether. If both groups are the same, the group name should be preceded by the prefix *di-*, as in dimethyl ether (CH_3–O–CH_3) and diethyl ether CH_3CH_2–O–CH_2CH_3.

Ether molecules have no hydrogen atom on the oxygen atom (that is, no OH group). Therefore there is no intermolecular hydrogen bonding between ether molecules, and ethers therefore have quite low boiling points for a given molar mass. Indeed, ethers have boiling points about the same as those of alkanes of comparable molar mass and much lower than those of the corresponding alcohols (Table 14.8.1).

Table 14.8.1: Comparison of Boiling Points of Alkanes, Alcohols, and Ethers

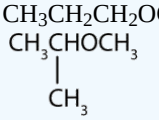
Condensed Structural Formula	Name	Molar Mass	Boiling Point (°C)	Intermolecular Hydrogen Bonding in Pure Liquid?
$CH_3CH_2CH_3$	propane	44	–42	no
CH_3OCH_3	dimethyl ether	46	–25	no
CH_3CH_2OH	ethyl alcohol	46	78	yes
$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$	pentane	72	36	no
$CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$	diethyl ether	74	35	no
$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$	butyl alcohol	74	117	yes

Ether molecules do have an oxygen atom, however, and engage in hydrogen bonding with water molecules. Consequently, an ether has about the same solubility in water as the alcohol that is isomeric with it. For example, dimethyl ether and ethanol (both having the molecular formula C_2H_6O) are completely soluble in water, whereas diethyl ether and 1-butanol (both $C_4H_{10}O$) are barely soluble in water (8 g/100 mL of water).

Example 14.8.1

What is the common name for each ether?

a. $CH_3CH_2CH_2OCH_2CH_2CH_3$

b. 

Solution

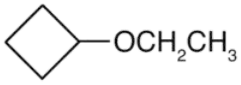
a. The carbon groups on either side of the oxygen atom are propyl ($CH_3CH_2CH_2$) groups, so the compound is dipropyl ether.

b. The three-carbon group is attached by the middle carbon atom, so it is an isopropyl group. The one-carbon group is a methyl group. The compound is isopropyl methyl ether.

Exercise 14.8.1

What is the common name for each ether?

a. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$

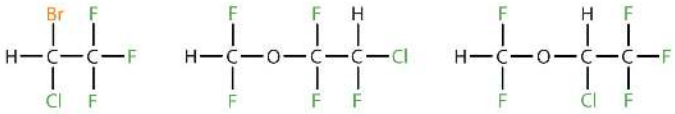
- 

To Your Health: Ethers as General Anesthetics

A *general anesthetic* acts on the brain to produce unconsciousness and a general insensitivity to feeling or pain. Diethyl ether ($CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$) was the first general anesthetic to be used.

William Morton, a Boston dentist, introduced diethyl ether into surgical practice in 1846. This painting shows an operation in Boston in 1846 in which diethyl ether was used as an anesthetic. Inhalation of ether vapor produces unconsciousness by depressing the activity of the central nervous system. Source: Painting of William Morton by Ernest Board.

Diethyl ether is relatively safe because there is a fairly wide gap between the dose that produces an effective level of anesthesia and the lethal dose. However, because it is highly flammable and has the added disadvantage of causing nausea, it has been replaced by newer inhalant anesthetics, including the fluorine-containing compounds halothane, enflurane, and isoflurane. Unfortunately, the safety of these compounds for operating room personnel has been questioned. For example, female operating room workers exposed to halothane suffer a higher rate of miscarriages than women in the general population.



These three modern, inhalant, halogen-containing, anesthetic compounds are less flammable than diethyl ether.

Summary

To give ethers common names, simply name the groups attached to the oxygen atom, followed by the generic name *ether*. If both groups are the same, the group name should be preceded by the prefix *di-*. Ether molecules have no OH group and thus no intermolecular hydrogen bonding. Ethers therefore have quite low boiling points for a given molar mass. Ether molecules have an oxygen atom and can engage in hydrogen bonding with water molecules. An ether molecule has about the same solubility in water as the alcohol that is isomeric with it.

14.8: Ethers is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **14.8: Ethers** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

14.9: Thiols and Disulfides

Learning Objectives

- Identify thiols (mercaptans) by the presence of an SH group.
- The mild oxidation of thiols gives disulfides.

Because sulfur is in the same group (6A) of the periodic table as oxygen, the two elements have some similar properties. We might expect sulfur to form organic compounds related to those of oxygen, and indeed it does. Thiols (also called mercaptans), which are sulfur analogs of alcohols, have the general formula RSH. Methanethiol (also called methyl mercaptan), has the formula CH_3SH. Ethanethiol (ethyl mercaptan) is the most common odorant for liquid propane (LP) gas.

The mild oxidation of thiols gives compounds called disulfides.

$$2\text{RSH} \xrightarrow{[\text{O}]} \text{RSSR}$$

The amino acids cysteine [$HSCH_2CH(NH_2)COOH$] and methionine [$CH_3SCH_2CH_2CH(NH_2)COOH$] contain sulfur atoms, as do all proteins that contain these amino acids. Disulfide linkages (–S–S–) between protein chains are extremely important in protein structure.

Thioethers, which are sulfur analogs of ethers, have the form general formula RS′. An example is dimethylsulfide (CH_3SCH_3), which is responsible for the sometimes unpleasant odor of cooking cabbage and related vegetables. Note that methionine has a thioether functional group.

Career Focus: Paramedic

Paramedics are highly trained experts at providing emergency medical treatment. Their critical duties often include rescue work and emergency medical procedures in a wide variety of settings, sometimes under extremely harsh and difficult conditions. Like other science-based professions, their work requires knowledge, ingenuity, and complex thinking, as well as a great deal of technical skill. The recommended courses for preparation in this field include anatomy, physiology, medical terminology, and—not surprisingly—chemistry. An understanding of basic principles of organic chemistry, for example, is useful when paramedics have to deal with such traumas as burns from fuel (hydrocarbons) or solvent (alcohols, ethers, esters, and so on) fires and alcohol and drug overdoses.

To become a paramedic requires 2–4 y of training and usually includes a stint as an emergency medical technician (EMT). An EMT provides basic care, can administer certain medications and treatments, such as oxygen for respiratory problems and epinephrine (adrenalin) for allergic reactions, and has some knowledge of common medical conditions. A paramedic, in contrast, must have extensive knowledge of common medical problems and be trained to administer a wide variety of emergency drugs.

Paramedics usually work under the direction of a medical doctor with a title such as “medical director.” Some paramedics are employed by fire departments and may work from a fire engine that carries medical equipment as well as fire-fighting gear. Some work from hospital-sponsored ambulances and continue to care for their patients after reaching the hospital emergency room. Still other paramedics work for a government department responsible for emergency health care in a specific geographical area. Finally, some work for private companies that contract to provide service for a government body.

An experienced paramedic has a broad range of employment options, including training for mountain or ocean rescue, working with police department special weapons and tactics (SWAT) teams, or working in isolated settings such as on oil rigs. With their expertise at treating and stabilizing patients before quickly moving them to a hospital, paramedics often provide the first critical steps in saving an endangered life. The following quotation, inscribed on the Arlington National Cemetery headstone of Army Lieutenant R. Adams Cowley, who is often called the “father” of shock trauma medicine, serves as the motto for many paramedic units: “Next to creating a life the finest thing a man can do is save one.” —Abraham Lincoln

Summary

Thiols, thioethers, and disulfides are common in biological compounds.

Concept Review Exercises

1. What is the functional group of a thiol? Write the condensed structural formula for ethanethiol (ethyl mercaptan).
2. What is the functional group of a disulfide? Write the condensed structural formula for dipropyl disulfide.

Answers

1. SH; CH_3CH_2SH
2. –S–S–; $CH_3CH_2CH_2SSCH_2CH_2CH_3$

Exercises

1. A common natural gas odorant is *tert*-butyl mercaptan. What is its condensed structural formula?
2. Write the equation for the oxidation of ethanethiol to diethyl disulfide.

Answer

1. $(CH_3)_3CSH$

14.9: Thiols and Disulfides is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **14.11: Organic Sulfur Compounds** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

14.10: Halogen-Containing Compounds

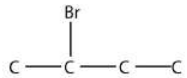
Learning Objectives

- Identify and name a simple alkyl halide.

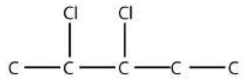
The presence of a halogen atom (F, Cl, Br, or I; also, X is used to represent any halogen atom) is one of the simplest functional groups. Organic compounds that contain a halogen atom are called **alkyl halides.** We have already seen some examples of alkyl halides when the addition of halogens across double and triple bonds was introduced in Section 16.3 - "Branched Hydrocarbons;" the products of these reactions were alkyl halides.

A simple alkyl halide can be named like an ionic salt, first by stating the name of the parent alkane as a substituent group (with the *-yl* suffix) and then the name of the halogen as if it were the anion. So CH_3Cl has the common name of methyl chloride, while CH_3CH_2Br is ethyl bromide and $CH_3CH_2CH_2I$ is propyl iodide. However, this system is not ideal for more complicated alkyl halides.

The systematic way of naming alkyl halides is to name the halogen as a substituent, just like an alkyl group, and use numbers to indicate the position of the halogen atom on the main chain. The name of the halogen as a substituent comes from the stem of the element's name plus the ending *-o*, so the substituent names are *fluoro-*, *chloro-*, *bromo-* and *iodo-*. If there is more than one of a certain halogen, we use numerical prefixes to indicate the number of each kind, just as with alkyl groups. For example, this molecule



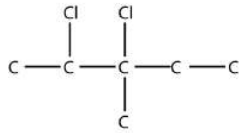
is 2-bromobutane, while this molecule



is 2,3-dichloropentane. If alkyl groups are present, the substituents are listed alphabetically. Numerical prefixes are ignored when determining the alphabetical ordering of substituent groups.

Example 14.10.1

Name this molecule.

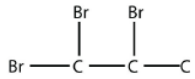


Solution

The longest carbon chain has five C atoms, so the molecule is a pentane. There are two chlorine substituents located on the second and third C atoms, with a one-carbon methyl group on the third C atom as well. The correct name for this molecule is 2,3-dichloro-3-methylpentane.

Exercise 14.10.1

Name this molecule.

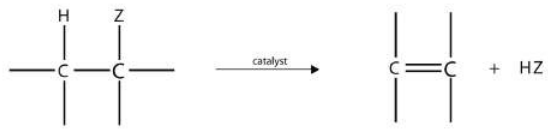


Answer

1,1,2-tribromopropane

Most alkyl halides are insoluble in H_2O. Smaller alcohols, however, are very soluble in H_2O because these molecules can engage in hydrogen bonding with H_2O molecules. For larger molecules, however, the polar OH group is overwhelmed by the nonpolar alkyl part of the molecule. While methanol is soluble in H_2O in all proportions, only about 2.6 g of pentanol will dissolve in 100 g of H_2O. Larger alcohols have an even lower solubility in H_2O.

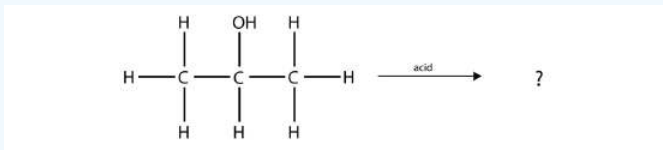
One reaction common to alcohols and alkyl halides is **elimination**, the removal of the functional group (either X or OH) and an H atom from an adjacent carbon. The general reaction can be written as follows:



where Z represents either the X or the OH group. The biggest difference between elimination in alkyl halides and elimination in alcohols is the identity of the catalyst: for alkyl halides, the catalyst is a strong base; for alcohols, the catalyst is a strong acid. For compounds in which there are H atoms on more than one adjacent carbon, a mixture of products results.

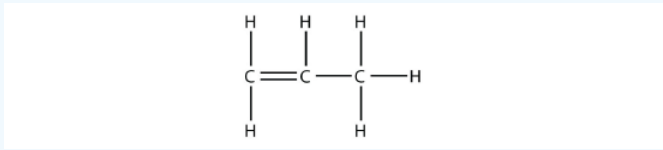
Example 14.10.3

Predict the organic product(s) of this reaction.



Solution

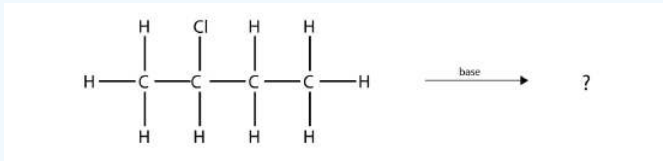
Under these conditions, an HOH (otherwise known as H_2O) molecule will be eliminated, and an alkene will be formed. It does not matter which adjacent carbon loses the H atom; in either case the product will be



which is propene.

Exercise 14.10.3

Predict the organic product(s) of this reaction.



Answer

1-butene and 2-butene

Key Takeaways

- Alkyl halides have a halogen atom as a functional group.
- Alcohols have an OH group as a functional group.
- Nomenclature rules allow us to name alkyl halides and alcohols.
- In an elimination reaction, a double bond is formed as an HX or an HOH molecule is removed.

14.10: Halogen-Containing Compounds is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **16.4: Alkyl Halides and Alcohols** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

15: Amines

15.1: Amines
15.2: Properties of Amines
15.3: Heterocyclic Nitrogen Compounds
15.4: Basicity of Amines
15.5: Amine Salts
15.6: Amines in Plants- Alkaloids

15: Amines is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.1: Amines

Learning Objectives

- Determine the structural feature that classifies amines as primary, secondary, or tertiary.

Amines are classified according to the number of carbon atoms bonded directly to the nitrogen atom. A primary (1°) amine has one alkyl (or aryl) group on the nitrogen atom, a secondary (2°) amine has two, and a tertiary (3°) amine has three (Figure 15.1.1).

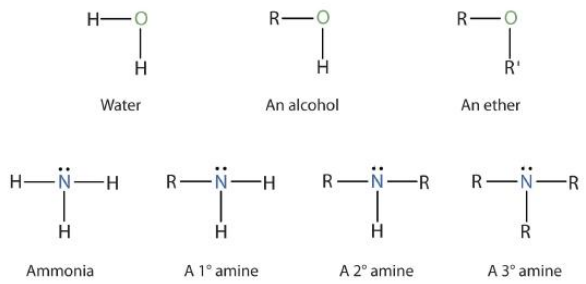


Figure 15.1.1: The Structure of Amines Compared to Water, an Alcohol, and an Ether

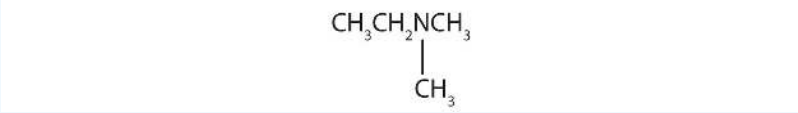
To classify alcohols, we look at the number of carbon atoms bonded to the *carbon atom* bearing the OH group, not the oxygen atom itself. Thus, although isopropylamine looks similar to isopropyl alcohol, the former is a *primary* amine, while the latter is a *secondary* alcohol.

The common names for simple aliphatic amines consist of an alphabetic list of alkyl groups attached to the nitrogen atom, followed by the suffix *-amine*. (Systematic names are often used by some chemists.) The amino group (NH_2) is named as a substituent in more complicated amines, such as those that incorporate other functional groups or in which the alkyl groups cannot be simply named.

Example 15.1.1

Name and classify each compound.

a. $CH_3CH_2CH_2NH_2$

b. 

- $CH_3CH_2NHCH_2CH_3$
- $CH_3CH_2CH_2NHCH_3$

Solution

a. There is only one alkyl group attached to the nitrogen atom, so the amine is primary. A group of three carbon atoms (a propyl group) is attached to the NH_2 group through an end carbon atom, so the name is propylamine.
b. There are two methyl groups and one ethyl group on the nitrogen atom. The compound is ethyldimethylamine, a tertiary amine.
c. There are two ethyl groups attached to the nitrogen atom; the amine is secondary, so the compound is diethylamine.
d. The nitrogen atom has a methyl group and a propyl group, so the compound is methylpropylamine, a secondary amine.

15.1: Amines is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **15.10: Amines - Structures and Names** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

15.2: Properties of Amines

Learning Objectives

- Explain why the boiling points of primary and secondary amines are higher than those of alkanes or ethers of similar molar mass but are lower than those of alcohols.
- Compare the boiling points of tertiary amines with alcohols, alkanes, and ethers of similar molar mass.
- Compare the solubilities in water of amines of five or fewer carbon atoms with the solubilities of comparable alkanes and alcohols in water.

Primary and secondary amines have hydrogen atoms bonded to an nitrogen atom and are therefore capable of hydrogen bonding (part (a) of Figure 15.2.1), although not as strongly as alcohol molecules (which have hydrogen atoms bonded to an oxygen atom, which is more electronegative than nitrogen). These amines boil at higher temperatures than alkanes but at lower temperatures than alcohols of comparable molar mass. For example, compare the boiling point of methylamine (CH_3NH_2; −6°C) with those of ethane (CH_3CH_3; −89°C) and methanol (CH_3OH; 65°C). Tertiary amines have no hydrogen atom bonded to the nitrogen atom and so cannot participate in intermolecular hydrogen bonding. They have boiling points comparable to those of ethers (Table 15.2.1).

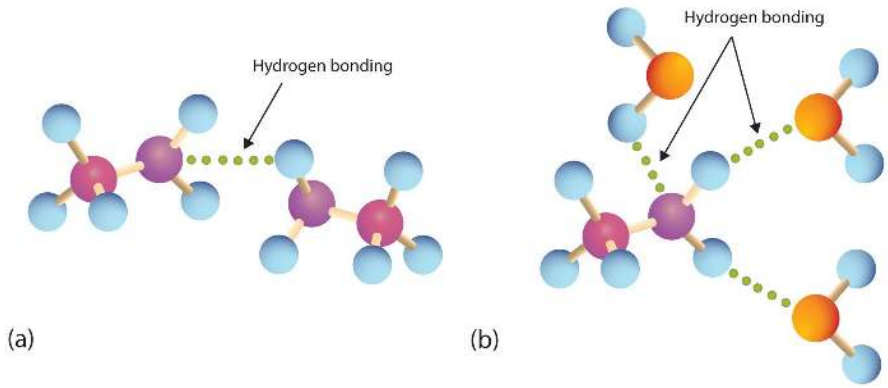


Figure 15.2.1: Hydrogen Bonding. (a) Amine molecules are associated through hydrogen bonding. (b) An amine molecule can form a hydrogen bond with water molecules.

Table 15.2.1: Physical Properties of Some Amines and Comparable Oxygen-Containing Compounds

Name	Condensed Structural Formula	Class	Molar Mass	Boiling Point (°C)	Solubility at 25°C (g/100 g Water)
butylamine	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2NH_2$	1°	73	78	miscible
diethylamine	$(CH_3CH_2)_2NH$	2°	73	55	miscible
butyl alcohol	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$	—	74	118	8
dipropylamine	$(CH_3CH_2CH_2)_2NH$	2°	101	111	4
triethylamine	$(CH_3CH_2)_3N$	3°	101	90	14
dipropyl ether	$(CH_3CH_2CH_2)_2O$	—	102	91	0.25

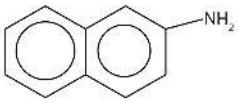
All three classes of amines can engage in hydrogen bonding with water (Figure 15.2.1*b*). Amines of low molar mass are quite soluble in water; the borderline of solubility in water is at five or six carbon atoms.

To Your Health: Amines in Death and Life

Amines have “interesting” odors. The simple ones smell very much like ammonia. Higher aliphatic amines smell like decaying fish. Or perhaps we should put it the other way around: Decaying fish give off odorous amines. The stench of rotting fish is due in part to two diamines: putrescine and cadaverine. They arise from the decarboxylation of ornithine and lysine, respectively, amino acids that are found in animal cells.

$$HOCH_2CH_2OH$$

Aromatic amines generally are quite toxic. They are readily absorbed through the skin, and workers must exercise caution when handling these compounds. Several aromatic amines, including β-naphthylamine, are potent carcinogens.



Key Takeaways

- Primary and secondary amines have higher boiling points than those of alkanes or ethers of similar molar mass because they can engage in intermolecular hydrogen bonding. Their boiling points are lower than those of alcohols because alcohol molecules have hydrogen atoms bonded to an oxygen atom, which is more electronegative.
- The boiling points of tertiary amines, which cannot engage in hydrogen bonding because they have no hydrogen atom on the nitrogen atom, are comparable to those of alkanes and ethers of similar molar mass.
- Because all three classes of amines can engage in hydrogen bonding with water, amines of low molar mass are quite soluble in water.

Concept Review Exercises

1. Which compound has the higher boiling point, $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2NH_2$ or $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$? Explain.
2. Which compound is more soluble in water, $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$ or $CH_3CH_2NHCH_2CH_3$? Explain.

Answers

1. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2NH_2$ because the nitrogen-to-hydrogen (N–H) bonds can engage in hydrogen bonding; $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$ cannot engage in hydrogen bonding
2. $CH_3CH_2NHCH_2CH_3$ because amines can engage in hydrogen bonding with water; alkanes cannot engage in hydrogen bonding

Exercises

1. Which compound of each pair has the higher boiling point? Explain.
   a. butylamine or pentane
   b. CH_3NH_2 or $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2NH_2$
2. Which compound of each pair has the higher boiling point? Explain.
   a. butylamine or butyl alcohol
   b. trimethylamine or propylamine
3. Which compound is more soluble in water—$CH_3CH_2CH_3$ or $CH_3CH_2NH_2$? Explain.
4. Which compound is more soluble in water—$CH_3CH_2CH_2NH_2$ or $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2NH_2$? Explain.

Answers

1. a. butylamine because the N–H bonds can engage in hydrogen bonding; pentane cannot engage in hydrogen bonding
   b. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2NH_2$ because it has a greater molar mass than CH_3NH_2
3. $CH_3CH_2NH_2$ because amines can engage in hydrogen bonding with water; alkanes cannot engage in hydrogen bonding

15.2: Properties of Amines is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **15.11: Physical Properties of Amines** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

15.3: Heterocyclic Nitrogen Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

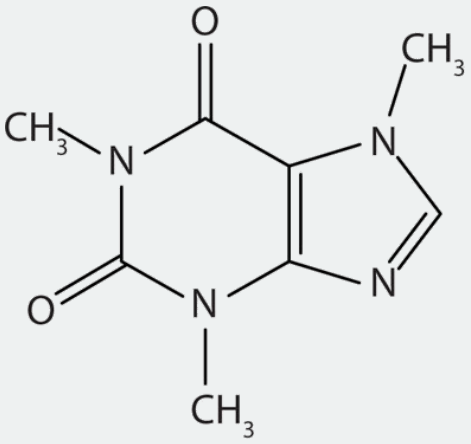
Heterocyclic Amines

Looking back at the various cyclic hydrocarbons discussed previously, we see that all the atoms in the rings of these compounds are carbon atoms. In other cyclic compounds, called **heterocyclic compounds** (Greek *heteros*, meaning "other"), nitrogen, oxygen, sulfur, or some other atom is incorporated in the ring. Many heterocyclic compounds are important in medicine and biochemistry. Some compose part of the structure of the nucleic acids, which in turn compose the genetic material of cells and direct protein synthesis.

Many heterocyclic amines occur naturally in plants. Like other amines, these compounds are basic. Such a compound is an **alkaloid**, a name that means "like alkalis." Many alkaloids are physiologically active, including the familiar drugs caffeine, nicotine, and cocaine.

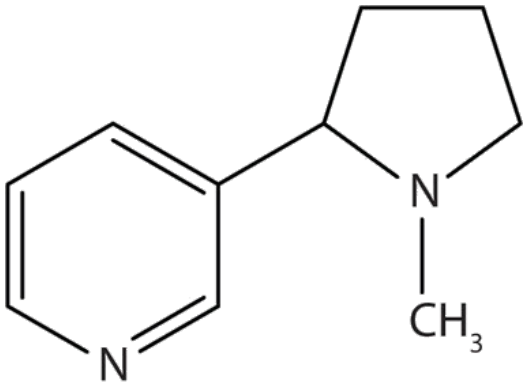
To Your Health: Three Well-Known Alkaloids

Caffeine is a stimulant found in coffee, tea, and some soft drinks. Its mechanism of action is not well understood, but it is thought to block the activity of adenosine, a heterocyclic base that acts as a neurotransmitter, a substance that carries messages across a tiny gap (synapse) from one nerve cell (neuron) to another cell. The effective dose of caffeine is about 200 mg, corresponding to about two cups of strong coffee or tea.



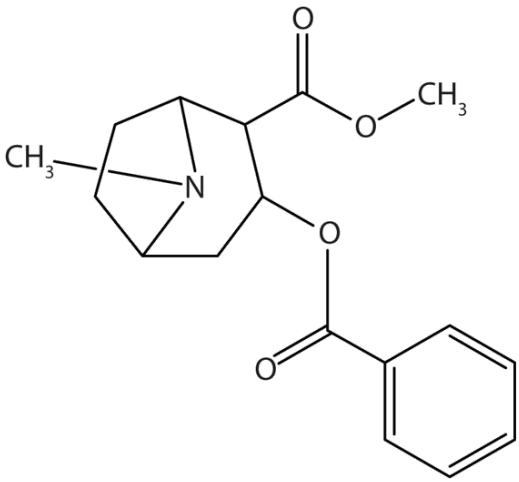
Caffeine

Nicotine acts as a stimulant by a different mechanism; it probably mimics the action of the neurotransmitter acetylcholine. People ingest this drug by smoking or chewing tobacco. Its stimulant effect seems transient, as this initial response is followed by depression. Nicotine is highly toxic to animals. It is especially deadly when injected; the lethal dose for a human is estimated to be about 50 mg. Nicotine has also been used in agriculture as a contact insecticide.



Nicotine

Cocaine acts as a stimulant by preventing nerve cells from taking up dopamine, another neurotransmitter, from the synapse. High levels of dopamine are therefore available to stimulate the pleasure centers of the brain. The enhancement of dopamine action is thought to be responsible for cocaine's "high" and its addictive properties. After the binge, dopamine is depleted in less than an hour. This leaves the user in a pleasureless state and (often) craving more cocaine.



Cocaine

Cocaine is used as the salt cocaine hydrochloride and in the form of broken lumps of the free (unneutralized) base, which is called *crack cocaine*.

$$\underset{\text{Cocaine (freebase)}}{C_{17}H_{21}O_4N} + HCl \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Cocaine hydrochloride}}{C_{17}H_{21}O_4NH^+Cl^-}$$

Because it is soluble in water, cocaine hydrochloride is readily absorbed through the watery mucous membranes of the nose when it is snorted. Crack cocaine is more volatile than cocaine hydrochloride. It vaporizes at the temperature of a burning cigarette. When smoked, cocaine reaches the brain in 15 s.

Summary

Amines are bases; they react with acids to form salts. Salts of aniline are properly named as *anilinium* compounds, but an older system is used to name drugs: the salts of amine drugs and hydrochloric acid are called "hydrochlorides." Heterocyclic amines are cyclic compounds with one or more nitrogen atoms in the ring.

15.3: Heterocyclic Nitrogen Compounds is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

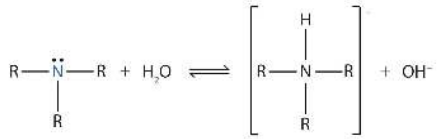
- **15.12: Amines as Bases** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

15.4: Basicity of Amines

Learning Objectives

- Name the typical reactions that take place with amines.
- Describe heterocyclic amines.

Recall that ammonia (NH_3) acts as a base because the nitrogen atom has a lone pair of electrons that can accept a proton. Amines also have a lone electron pair on their nitrogen atoms and can accept a proton from water to form substituted ammonium (NH_4^+) ions and hydroxide (OH^-) ions:



As a specific example, methylamine reacts with water to form the methylammonium ion and the OH^- ion.

$$\underset{\text{Methylamine}}{CH_3NH_2(aq)} + H_2O \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{Methylammonium ion}}{CH_3NH_3^+(aq)} + OH^-(aq)$$

Nearly all amines, including those that are not very soluble in water, will react with strong acids to form salts soluble in water.

$$\underset{\substack{\text{Octylamine}\\ \text{(insoluble)}}}{CH_3(CH_2)_6NH_2(l)} + HNO_3(aq) \longrightarrow \underset{\substack{\text{Octylammonium nitrate}\\ \text{(soluble)}}}{CH_3(CH_2)_6NH_3^+NO_3^-(aq)}$$

Amine salts are named like other salts: the name of the cation is followed by the name of the anion.

Example 15.4.1

What are the formulas of the acid and base that react to form $[CH_3NH_2CH_2CH_3]^+CH_3COO^-$?

Solution

The cation has two groups—methyl and ethyl—attached to the nitrogen atom. It comes from ethylmethylamine ($CH_3NHCH_2CH_3$). The anion is the acetate ion. It comes from acetic acid (CH_3COOH).

Exercise 15.4.1

What are the formulas of the acid and base that react to form $(CH_3CH_2CH_2)_3NH^+I^-$?

To Your Health: Amine Salts as Drugs

Salts of aniline are properly named as *anilinium* compounds, but an older system, still in use for naming drugs, identifies the salt of aniline and hydrochloric acid as "aniline hydrochloride." These compounds are ionic—they are salts—and the properties of the compounds (solubility, for example) are those characteristic of salts. Many drugs that are amines are converted to hydrochloride salts to increase their solubility in aqueous solution.

15.4: Basicity of Amines is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **15.12: Amines as Bases** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

15.5: Amine Salts

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

15.5: Amine Salts is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.6: Amines in Plants- Alkaloids

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

Addictive Alkaloids

Since ancient times, plants have been used for medicinal purposes. One class of substances, called *alkaloids*, found in many of these plants has been isolated and found to contain cyclic molecules with an amine functional group. These amines are bases. They can react with H_3O^+ in a dilute acid to form an ammonium salt, and this property is used to extract them from the plant:

$$R_3N + H_3O^+ + Cl^- \longrightarrow [R_3NH^+]Cl^- + H_2O$$

The name alkaloid means “like an alkali.” Thus, an alkaloid reacts with acid. The free compound can be recovered after extraction by reaction with a base:

$$[R_3NH^+]Cl^- + OH^- \longrightarrow R_3N + H_2O + Cl^-$$

The structures of many naturally occurring alkaloids have profound physiological and psychotropic effects in humans. Examples of these drugs include nicotine, morphine, codeine, and heroin. The plant produces these substances, collectively called secondary plant compounds, as chemical defenses against the numerous pests that attempt to feed on the plant:

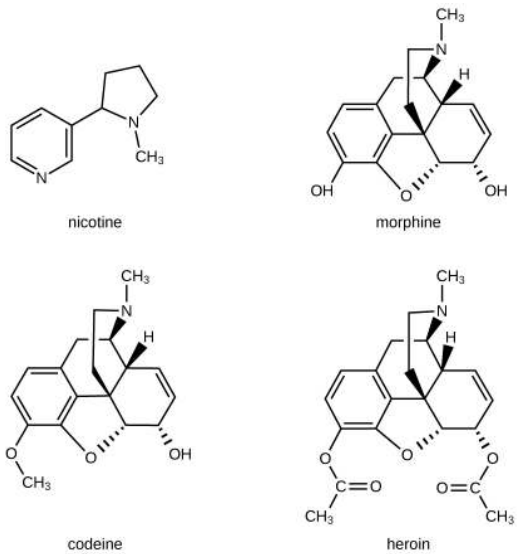


Figure 15.6.3).

Figure 15.6.3: Poppies can be used in the production of opium, a plant latex that contains morphine from which other opiates, such as heroin, can be synthesized. (credit: Karen Roe)

15.6: Amines in Plants- Alkaloids is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **20.5: Amines and Amides** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

16: Aldehydes and Ketones

16.1: The Carbonyl Group
16.2: Naming Aldehydes and Ketones
16.3: Properties of Aldehydes and Ketones
16.4: Some Common Aldehydes and Ketones
16.5: Oxidation of Aldehydes
16.6: Reduction of Aldehydes and Ketones
16.7: Addition of Alcohols - Hemiacetals and Acetals

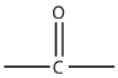
16: Aldehydes and Ketones is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

16.1: The Carbonyl Group

Learning Objective

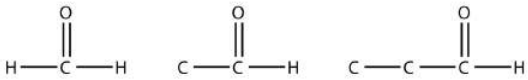
- Identify the aldehyde and ketone functional groups.

There are other functional groups that contain O atoms. Before we introduce them, we define the **carbonyl group**, which is formed when an O atom and a C atom are joined by a double bond:



The other two bonds on the C atom are attached to other atoms. It is the identities of these other atoms that define what specific type of compound an organic molecule is.

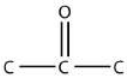
If one bond of the carbonyl group is made to an H atom, then the molecule is classified as an **aldehyde** (If there are two H atoms, there is only 1 C atom). When naming aldehydes, the main chain of C atoms must include the carbon in the carbonyl group, which is numbered as position 1 in the carbon chain. The parent name of the hydrocarbon is used, but the suffix *-al* is appended. (Do not confuse *-al* with *-ol*, which is the suffix used for alcohols.) So we have



Methanal Ethanal Propanal

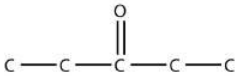
Methanal has a common name with which you may be familiar: formaldehyde. The main thing to note about aldehydes is that the carbonyl group is at the *end* of a carbon chain.

A carbonyl group in the middle of a carbon chain implies that both remaining bonds of the carbonyl group are made to C atoms. This type of molecule is called a **ketone.** Despite the fact that aldehydes and ketones have the same carbonyl group, they have different chemical and physical properties and are properly grouped as two different types of compounds. The smallest ketone has three C atoms in it. When naming a ketone, we take the name of the parent hydrocarbon and change the suffix to *-one*:



Propanone

The common name for propanone is acetone. With larger ketones, we must use a number to indicate the position of the carbonyl group, much like a number is used with alkenes and alkynes:



3-Pentanone

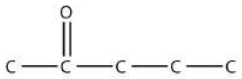
There is another way to name ketones: name the alkyl groups that are attached to the carbonyl group and add the word *ketone* to the name. So propanone can also be called dimethyl ketone, while 2-butanone is called methyl ethyl ketone.

Example 16.1.1

Draw the structure of 2-pentanone.

Solution

This molecule has five C atoms in a chain, with the carbonyl group on the second C atom. Its structure is as follows:



16.1: The Carbonyl Group is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

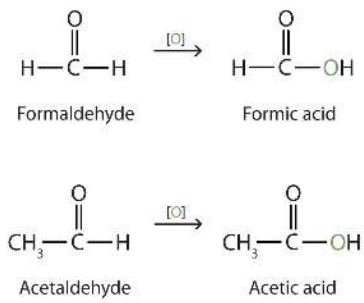
- **16.5: Other Oxygen-Containing Functional Groups** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

16.2: Naming Aldehydes and Ketones

Learning Objectives

- Use the IUPAC system to name and draw aldehydes and ketones.

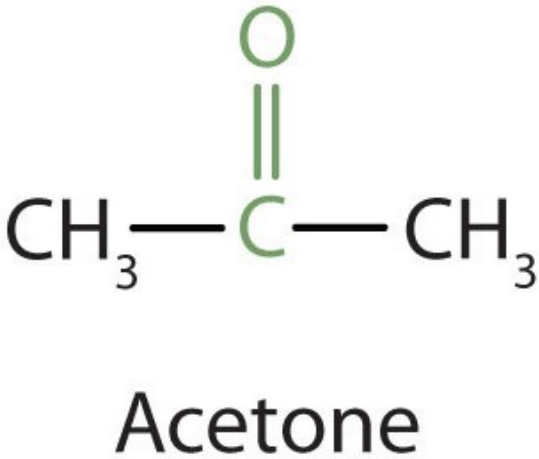
Both common and International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) names are frequently used for aldehydes and ketones, with common names predominating for the lower homologs. The common names of aldehydes are taken from the names of the acids into which the aldehydes can be converted by *oxidation*.



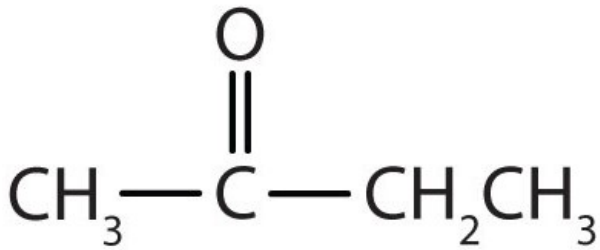
The stems for the common names of the first four aldehydes are as follows:

- 1 carbon atom: *form-*
- 2 carbon atoms: *acet-*
- 3 carbon atoms: *propion-*
- 4 carbon atoms: *butyr-*

Because the carbonyl group in a ketone must be attached to two carbon groups, the simplest ketone has three carbon atoms. It is widely known as *acetone*, a unique name unrelated to other common names for ketones.



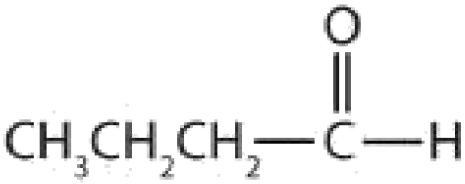
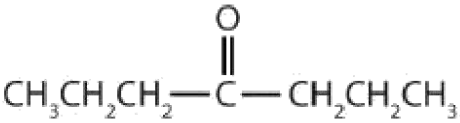
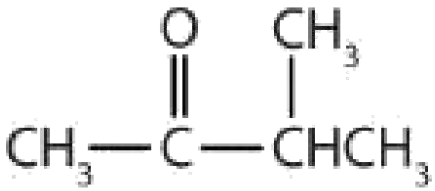
Generally, the common names of ketones consist of the names of the groups attached to the carbonyl group, followed by the word *ketone*. (Note the similarity to the naming of ethers.) Another name for acetone, then, is *dimethyl ketone*. The ketone with four carbon atoms is ethyl methyl ketone.



Ethyl methyl ketone

Example 16.2.1

Classify each compound as an aldehyde or a ketone. Give the common name for each ketone.

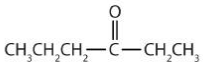
1. 
- 
- 

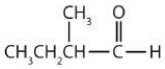
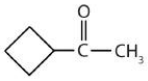
Solution

1. This compound has the carbonyl group on an end carbon atom, so it is an aldehyde.
2. This compound has the carbonyl group on an interior carbon atom, so it is a ketone. Both alkyl groups are propyl groups. The name is therefore dipropyl ketone.
3. This compound has the carbonyl group between two alkyl groups, so it is a ketone. One alkyl group has three carbon atoms and is attached by the middle carbon atom; it is an isopropyl group. A group with one carbon atom is a methyl group. The name is therefore isopropyl methyl ketone.

Exercise 16.2.1

Classify each compound as an aldehyde or a ketone. Give the common name for each ketone.

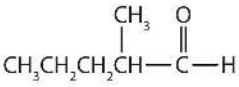
1. 

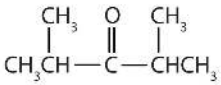
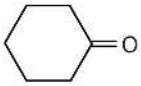
- 
- 

Here are some simple IUPAC rules for naming aldehydes and ketones:

Example 16.2.2

Give the IUPAC name for each compound.

a. 

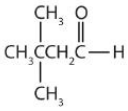
- 
- 

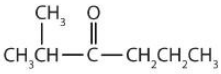
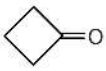
Solution

a. There are five carbon atoms in the LCC. The methyl group (CH_3) is a substituent on the second carbon atom of the chain; the aldehyde carbon atom is always C1. The name is derived from pentane. Dropping the *-e* and adding the ending *-al* gives pentanal. The methyl group on the second carbon atom makes the name 2-methylpentanal.
b. There are five carbon atoms in the LCC. The carbonyl carbon atom is C3, and there are methyl groups on C2 and C4. The IUPAC name is 2,4-dimethyl-3-pentanone.
c. There are six carbon atoms in the ring. The compound is cyclohexanone. No number is needed to indicate the position of the carbonyl group because all six carbon atoms are equivalent.

Exercise

Give the IUPAC name for each compound.

a. 

- 
- 

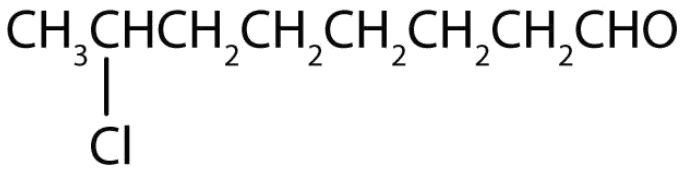
Example 16.2.3

Draw the structure for each compound.

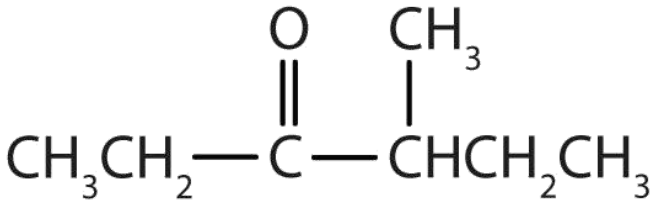
a. 7-chlorooctanal
b. 4-methyl–3-hexanone

Solution

a. The *octan*- part of the name tells us that the LCC has eight carbon atoms. There is a chlorine (Cl) atom on the seventh carbon atom; numbering from the carbonyl group and counting the carbonyl carbon atom as C1, we place the Cl atom on the seventh carbon atom.



- The *hexan*- part of the name tells us that the LCC has six carbon atoms. The 3 means that the carbonyl carbon atom is C3 in this chain, and the 4 tells us that there is a methyl (CH_3) group at C4:



? Exercise

Draw the structure for each compound.

a. 5-bromo-3-iodoheptanal
b. 5-bromo-4-ethyl-2-heptanone

Concept Review Exercises

Summary

The common names of aldehydes are taken from the names of the corresponding carboxylic acids: formaldehyde, acetaldehyde, and so on. The common names of ketones, like those of ethers, consist of the names of the groups attached to the carbonyl group, followed by the word *ketone*. Stem names of aldehydes and ketones are derived from those of the parent alkanes, using an *-al* ending for an aldehydes and an *-one* ending for a ketone.

1. The stem names of aldehydes and ketones are derived from those of the parent alkanes, defined by the longest continuous chain (LCC) of carbon atoms that contains the functional group.
2. For an aldehyde, drop the *-e* from the alkane name and add the ending *-al*. Methanal is the IUPAC name for formaldehyde, and ethanal is the name for acetaldehyde.
3. For a ketone, drop the *-e* from the alkane name and add the ending *-one*. Propanone is the IUPAC name for acetone, and butanone is the name for ethyl methyl ketone.
4. To indicate the position of a substituent on an aldehyde, the carbonyl carbon atom is always considered to be C1; it is unnecessary to designate this group by number.
5. To indicate the position of a substituent on a ketone, number the chain in the manner that gives the carbonyl carbon atom the lowest possible number. In cyclic ketones, it is understood that the carbonyl carbon atom is C1.
6. Give the structure and IUPAC name for the compound that has the common name *m*-bromobenzaldehyde.
7. Give the IUPAC name for glyceraldehyde, ($HOCH_2CHOHCHO$). (Hint: as a substituent, the OH group is named *hydroxy*.)

16.2: Naming Aldehydes and Ketones is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

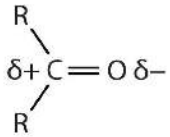
- **14.9: Aldehydes and Ketones- Structure and Names** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

16.3: Properties of Aldehydes and Ketones

Learning Objectives

- Explain why the boiling points of aldehydes and ketones are higher than those of ethers and alkanes of similar molar masses but lower than those of comparable alcohols.
- Compare the solubilities in water of aldehydes and ketones of four or fewer carbon atoms with the solubilities of comparable alkanes and alcohols.
- Name the typical reactions take place with aldehydes and ketones.
- Describe some of the uses of common aldehydes and ketones.

The carbon-to-oxygen double bond is quite polar, more polar than a carbon-to-oxygen single bond. The electronegative oxygen atom has a much greater attraction for the bonding electron pairs than does the carbon atom. The carbon atom has a partial positive charge, and the oxygen atom has a partial negative charge:



In aldehydes and ketones, this charge separation leads to dipole-dipole interactions that are great enough to significantly affect the boiling points. Table 16.3.1 shows that the polar single bonds in ethers have little such effect, whereas hydrogen bonding between alcohol molecules is even stronger.

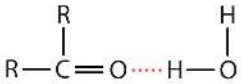
Table 16.3.1: Boiling Points of Compounds Having Similar Molar Masses but Different Types of Intermolecular Forces

Compound	Family	Molar Mass	Type of Intermolecular Forces	Boiling Point (°C)
$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$	alkane	58	dispersion only	–1
$CH_3OCH_2CH_3$	ether	60	weak dipole	6
CH_3CH_2CHO	aldehyde	58	strong dipole	49
$CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$	alcohol	60	hydrogen bonding	97

Formaldehyde is a gas at room temperature. Acetaldehyde boils at 20°C; in an open vessel, it boils away in a warm room. Most other common aldehydes are liquids at room temperature.

> Although the lower members of the homologous series have pungent odors, many higher aldehydes have pleasant odors and are used in perfumes and artificial flavorings. As for the ketones, acetone has a pleasant odor, but most of the higher homologs have rather bland odors.

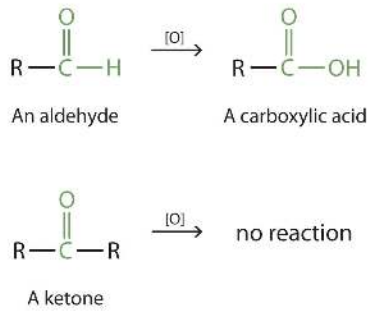
The oxygen atom of the carbonyl group engages in hydrogen bonding with a water molecule.



The solubility of aldehydes is therefore about the same as that of alcohols and ethers. Formaldehyde, acetaldehyde, and acetone are soluble in water. As the carbon chain increases in length, solubility in water decreases. The borderline of solubility occurs at about four carbon atoms per oxygen atom. All aldehydes and ketones are soluble in organic solvents and, in general, are less dense than water.

Oxidation of Aldehydes and Ketones

Aldehydes and ketones are much alike in many of their reactions, owing to the presence of the carbonyl functional group in both. They differ greatly, however, in one most important type of reaction: oxidation. Aldehydes are readily oxidized to carboxylic acids, whereas ketones resist oxidation.



The aldehydes are, in fact, among the most easily oxidized of organic compounds. They are oxidized by oxygen (O_2) in air to carboxylic acids.

$$2RCHO + O_2 \rightarrow 2RCOOH \tag{16.3.1}$$

The ease of oxidation helps chemists identify aldehydes. A sufficiently mild oxidizing agent can distinguish aldehydes not only from ketones but also from alcohols. Tollens' reagent, for example, is an alkaline solution of silver (Ag^+) ion complexed with ammonia (NH_3), which keeps the Ag^+ ion in solution.

$$H_3N—Ag^+—NH_3 \tag{16.3.2}$$

When Tollens' reagent oxidizes an aldehyde, the Ag^+ ion is reduced to free silver (Ag).

$$\underset{\text{An aldehyde}}{RCHO(aq)} + 2Ag(NH_3)_2^+(aq) + 3OH^-(aq) \longrightarrow$$

$$RCOO^-(aq) + \underset{\text{Free silver}}{2Ag(s)} + 4\,NH_3(aq) + 2H_2O$$

Deposited on a clean glass surface, the silver produces a mirror (Figure 16.3.1). Ordinary ketones do not react with Tollens' reagent.

Figure 16.3.1: Aldehyde Reactions. A reaction related to the Tollens' reaction is often used to silver mirrors. These ornaments were silvered by such a reaction. Glucose, a simple sugar with an aldehyde functional group, is used as the reducing agent. Source: Photo courtesy of Krebs Glas Lauscha, commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Silvering.jpg.

Although ketones resist oxidation by ordinary laboratory oxidizing agents, they undergo combustion, as do aldehydes.

Summary

The polar carbon-to-oxygen double bond causes aldehydes and ketones to have higher boiling points than those of ethers and alkanes of similar molar masses but lower than those of comparable alcohols that engage in intermolecular hydrogen bonding.

Aldehydes are readily oxidized to carboxylic acids, whereas ketones resist oxidation.

16.3: Properties of Aldehydes and Ketones is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **14.10: Properties of Aldehydes and Ketones** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

16.4: Some Common Aldehydes and Ketones

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

Formaldehyde has an irritating odor. Because of its reactivity, it is difficult to handle in the gaseous state. For many uses, it is therefore dissolved in water and sold as a 37% to 40% aqueous solution called *formalin*. Formaldehyde denatures proteins, rendering them insoluble in water and resistant to bacterial decay. For this reason, formalin is used in embalming solutions and in preserving biological specimens.

Aldehydes are the active components in many other familiar substances. Large quantities of formaldehyde are used to make phenol-formaldehyde resins for gluing the wood sheets in plywood and as adhesives in other building materials. Sometimes the formaldehyde escapes from the materials and causes health problems in some people. While some people seem unaffected, others experience coughing, wheezing, eye irritation, and other symptoms.

> *The odor of green leaves is due in part to a carbonyl compound, cis-3-hexenal, which with related compounds is used to impart a "green" herbal odor to shampoos and other products.*

Acetaldehyde is an extremely volatile, colorless liquid. It is a starting material for the preparation of many other organic compounds. Acetaldehyde is formed as a metabolite in the fermentation of sugars and in the detoxification of alcohol in the liver. Aldehydes are the active components of many other familiar materials (Figure 16.4.2).

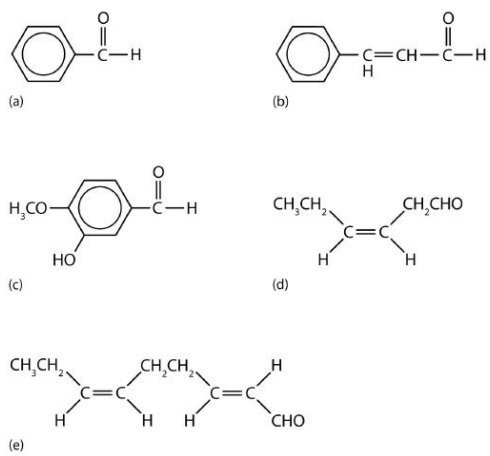


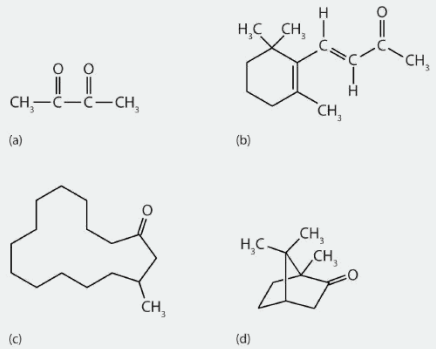
Figure 16.4.2 Some Interesting Aldehydes. (a) Benzaldehyde is an oil found in almonds; (b) cinnamaldehyde is oil of cinnamon; (c) vanillin gives vanilla its flavor; (d) *cis*-3-hexenal provides an herbal odor; and (e) *trans*-2-*cis*-6-nonadienal gives a cucumber odor.

Acetone is the simplest and most important ketone. Because it is miscible with water as well as with most organic solvents, its chief use is as an industrial solvent (for example, for paints and lacquers). It is also the chief ingredient in some brands of nail polish remover.

To Your Health: Acetone in Blood, Urine, and Breath

Acetone is formed in the human body as a by-product of lipid metabolism. Normally, acetone does not accumulate to an appreciable extent because it is oxidized to carbon dioxide and water. The normal concentration of acetone in the human body is less than 1 mg/100 mL of blood. In certain disease states, such as uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, the acetone concentration rises to higher levels. It is then excreted in the urine, where it is easily detected. In severe cases, its odor can be noted on the breath.

Ketones are also the active components of other familiar substances, some of which are noted in the accompanying figure.



Some ketones have interesting properties: (a) Butter flavoring comes from 2,3-butanedione; (b) β-ionone is responsible for the odor of violets; (c) muscone is musk oil, an ingredient in perfumes; and (d) camphor is used in some insect repellents.

Certain steroid hormones have the ketone functional group as a part of their structure. Two examples are progesterone, a hormone secreted by the ovaries that stimulates the growth of cells in the uterine wall and prepares it for attachment of a fertilized egg, and testosterone, the main male sex hormone. These and other sex hormones affect our development and our lives in fundamental ways.

16.4: Some Common Aldehydes and Ketones is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

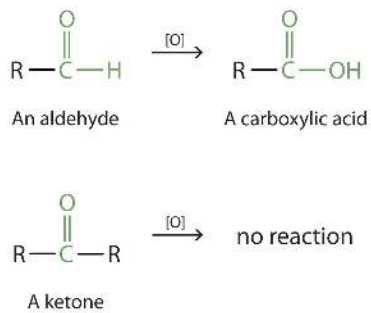
- **14.10: Properties of Aldehydes and Ketones** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

16.5: Oxidation of Aldehydes

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2
-

ldehydes and ketones are much alike in many of their reactions, owing to the presence of the carbonyl functional group in both. They differ greatly, however, in one most important type of reaction: oxidation. Aldehydes are readily oxidized to carboxylic acids, whereas ketones resist oxidation.



The aldehydes are, in fact, among the most easily oxidized of organic compounds. They are oxidized by oxygen (O_2) in air to carboxylic acids.

$$2RCHO + O_2 \rightarrow 2RCOOH \tag{16.5.1}$$

The ease of oxidation helps chemists identify aldehydes. A sufficiently mild oxidizing agent can distinguish aldehydes not only from ketones but also from alcohols. Tollens' reagent, for example, is an alkaline solution of silver (Ag^+) ion complexed with ammonia (NH_3), which keeps the Ag^+ ion in solution.

$$H_3N—Ag^+—NH_3 \tag{16.5.2}$$

When Tollens' reagent oxidizes an aldehyde, the Ag^+ ion is reduced to free silver (Ag).

$$\underset{\text{An aldehyde}}{RCHO(aq)} + 2Ag(NH_3)_2^+(aq) + 3OH^-(aq) \longrightarrow$$

$$RCOO^-(aq) + \underset{\text{Free silver}}{2Ag(s)} + 4\,NH_3(aq) + 2H_2O$$

Deposited on a clean glass surface, the silver produces a mirror (Figure 16.5.1). Ordinary ketones do not react with Tollens' reagent.

Figure 16.5.1: Aldehyde Reactions. A reaction related to the Tollens' reaction is often used to silver mirrors. These ornaments were silvered by such a reaction. Glucose, a simple sugar with an aldehyde functional group, is used as the reducing agent. Source: Photo courtesy of Krebs Glas Lauscha, commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Silvering.jpg.

Although ketones resist oxidation by ordinary laboratory oxidizing agents, they undergo combustion, as do aldehydes.

16.5: Oxidation of Aldehydes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **14.10: Properties of Aldehydes and Ketones** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

16.6: Reduction of Aldehydes and Ketones

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

16.6: Reduction of Aldehydes and Ketones is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

16.7: Addition of Alcohols - Hemiacetals and Acetals

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

16.7: Addition of Alcohols - Hemiacetals and Acetals is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

17: Carboxylic Acids and their Derivatives

17.1: Carboxylic Acids and Their Derivatives- Properties and Names
17.2: Some Common Carboxylic Acids
17.3: Acidity of Carboxylic Acids
17.4: Reactions of Carboxylic Acids - Ester and Amide Formation
17.5: Aspirin and Other Over-the-Counter Carboxylic Acid
17.6: Hydrolysis of Esters and Amides
17.7: Polyamides and Polyesters
17.8: Phosphoric Acid Derivatives

17: Carboxylic Acids and their Derivatives is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.1: Carboxylic Acids and Their Derivatives- Properties and Names

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

17.1: Carboxylic Acids and Their Derivatives- Properties and Names is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.2: Some Common Carboxylic Acids

17.02: Some Common Carboxylic Acids

17.2: Some Common Carboxylic Acids is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

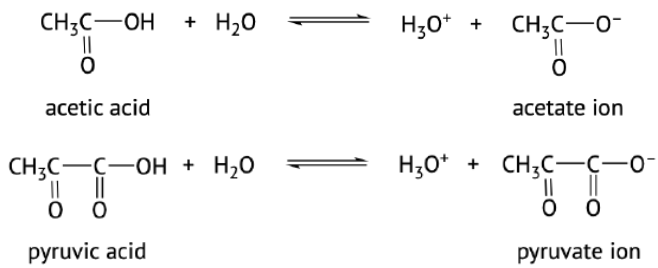
17.3: Acidity of Carboxylic Acids

Learning Objectives

- Define pK_a and use it to determine acidity of different carboxylic acids.
- Describe the reactions between carboxylic acids and strong bases.

Ionization of Carboxylic Acids

Carboxylic acids are named such because they tend to be more acidic than other functional groups in organic chemistry. In dilute aqueous solutions, they act as *weak acids* that partially dissociate to produce the corresponding **carboxylate anion** and hydronium cation (H_3O^+). Carboxylate anions are named by replacing the *-ic acid* ending from the carboxylic acid with *-ate*, see examples below.



The extent of dissociation of these weak acids in water is described by K_a values. Remember that a compound with a smaller K_a value will be a weaker acid.

$$RCOOH + H_2O \rightleftharpoons RCOO^- + H_3O^+ \quad K_a = \frac{[\mathrm{RCOO^-}][\mathrm{H_3O^+}]}{[\mathrm{RCOOH}]}$$

When comparing the acidity of organic and biomolecules, it is useful (and more preferable) to use pK_a values instead of K_a values, which are calculated by taking the negative log of K_a: $pK_a = -\log K_a$. When using the pK_a scale, it is important to know that *weaker acids* have *larger* and more positive pK_a values, this is opposite of K_a values. The pK_a values of some typical carboxylic acids are listed in Table $17.3.1$. (Remember that pK_a is a log expression, which means that every 1 pK_a unit represents a 10-fold change in acidity.)

Table $17.3.1$: Comparisons of Carboxylic Acid K_a and pK_a Values

Name	Compound	K_a	pK_a
formic acid	HCOOH	1.8 X 10^{-4}	3.74
acetic acid	CH_3COOH	1.8 X 10^{-5}	4.74
propanoic acid	CH_3CH_2COOH	1.3 X 10^{-5}	4.89
butanoic acid	$CH_3CH_2CH_2COOH$	1.5 X 10^{-5}	4.82
chloroacetic acid	$ClCH_2COOH$	1.4 X 10^{-3}	2.85
trichloroacetic acid	Cl_3CCOOH	2.3 X 10^{-1}	0.64
hexanoic acid	$CH_3(CH_2)_4COOH$	1.3 X 10^{-5}	4.89
benzoic acid	C_6H_5COOH	6.5 X 10^{-5}	4.19
oxalic acid	HOOCCOOH	5.4 X 10^{-2}	1.27
	$^-$OOCCOOH	5.2 X 10^{-5}	4.28
glutaric acid	$HOOC(CH_2)_3COOH$	4.5 X 10^{-5}	4.35
	$^-OOC(CH_2)_3COOH$	3.8 X 10^{-6}	5.42

Neutralization of Carboxylic Acids

Carboxylic acids will react with bases such as sodium hydroxide (NaOH), sodium carbonate (Na_2CO_3), and sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) to form water and a **carboxylic acid salt**:

$$RCOOH + NaOH(aq) \rightarrow RCOO^-Na^+(aq) + H_2O$$

$$2RCOOH + Na_2CO_3(aq) \rightarrow 2RCOO^-Na^+(aq) + H_2O + CO_2(g)$$

$$RCOOH + NaHCO_3(aq) \rightarrow RCOO^-Na^+(aq) + H_2O + CO_2(g)$$

In these reactions, the carboxylic acids act like inorganic acids: they neutralize basic compounds. With solutions of carbonate (CO_3^{2-}) and bicarbonate (HCO_3) ions, they also form carbon dioxide gas.

Carboxylic acid salts are named in the same manner as inorganic salts: the name of the cation is followed by the name of the organic anion. The name of the anion is obtained by dropping the *-ic* ending of the acid name and replacing it with the suffix *-ate*. This rule applies whether we are using common names or International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) names:

$CH_3COO^-Li^+$	$CH_3CH_2CH_2COO^-K^+$	$C_6H_5COO^-Na^+$
Lithium acetate (lithium ethanoate)	Potassium butyrate (potassium butanoate)	Sodium benzoate

Note

The salts of long-chain carboxylic acids are called soaps.

$CH_3(CH_2)_{13}CH_2COO^-Na^+$

Sodium palmitate (a soap)

Example 17.3.1

Write an equation for each reaction.

1. the ionization of propionic acid in water (H_2O)
2. the neutralization of propionic acid with aqueous sodium hydroxide (NaOH)

Solution

Propionic acid has three carbon atoms, so its formula is CH_2CH_2COOH.

1. Propionic acid ionizes in water to form a propionate ion and a hydronium (H_3O^+) ion. $CH_3CH_2COOH(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow CH_3CH_2COO^-(aq) + H_3O^+(aq)$
2. Propionic acid reacts with NaOH(aq) to form sodium propionate and water. $CH_3CH_2COOH(aq) + NaOH(aq) \rightarrow CH_3CH_2COO^-Na^+(aq) + H_2O(\ell)$

Exercise 17.3.1

Write an equation for each reaction.

a. the ionization of formic acid in water
b. the ionization of *p*-chlorobenzoic acid in water

Example 17.3.2

Write an equation for the reaction of decanoic acid with each compound.

a. aqueous sodium hydoxide (NaOH)
b. aqueous sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$)

Solution

a. Decanoic acid has 10 carbon atoms. It reacts with NaOH to form a salt and water (H_2O). $CH_3(CH_2)_8COOH + NaOH(aq) \rightarrow CH_3(CH_2)_8COO^-Na^+(aq) + H_2O(\ell)$
b. With $NaHCO_3$, the products are a salt, H_2O, and carbon dioxide (CO_2). $CH_3(CH_2)_8COOH + NaHCO_3(aq) \rightarrow CH_3(CH_2)_8COO^-Na^+(aq) + H_2O(\ell) + CO_2(g)$

Exercise 17.3.3

Write an equation for the reaction of benzoic acid with each compound.

a. aqueous sodium hydroxide (NaOH)
b. aqueous sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$)

Note To Your Health: Organic Salts as Preservatives

Some organic salts are used as preservatives in food products. They prevent spoilage by inhibiting the growth of bacteria and fungi. Calcium and sodium propionate, for example, are added to processed cheese and bakery goods; sodium benzoate is added to cider, jellies, pickles, and syrups; and sodium sorbate and potassium sorbate are added to fruit juices, sauerkraut, soft drinks, and wine. Look for them on ingredient labels the next time you shop for groceries.

17.3: Acidity of Carboxylic Acids is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **20.2: Structure and Properties of Carboxylic Acids** by Dietmar Kennepohl, Layne Morsch, Steven Farmer, William Reusch is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.
- **15.4: Chemical Properties of Carboxylic Acids- Ionization and Neutralization** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

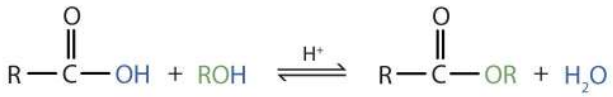
17.4: Reactions of Carboxylic Acids - Ester and Amide Formation

Learning Objectives

- To identify and describe the substances from which most esters are prepared.
- To identify and describe the substances from which most amides are prepared.

Carboxylic acids will react with alcohols and amines following a similar pattern. In both cases, the –OH group of the carboxylic acid will be replaced by a different group to form either an ester or an amide, with water formed as a by-product. When the reaction involves an alcohol, the –OH of the acid is replaced by the –OR' of the alcohol. When the reaction involves an amine, the –OH of the acid is replaced by the $–NH_2$, or –NHR', or $–NR'_2$ of the amine.

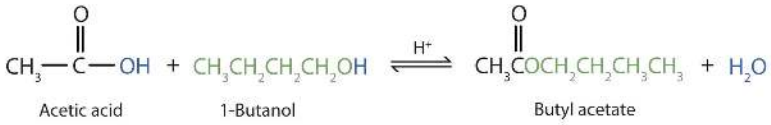
Ester formation



Amide formation

Esterification

Esters are prepared by **esterification**, a reaction in which a carboxylic acid and an alcohol are heated in the presence of an acid catalyst:

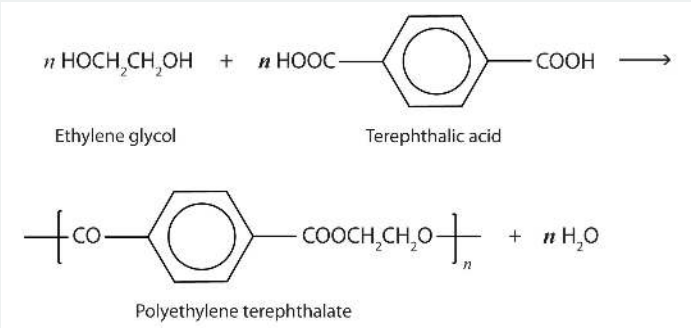


The reaction is reversible and will reach equilibrium with approximately equivalent amounts of reactants and products. Using excess amounts of alcohol and continuously removing a product, can drive the reaction towards the product side as per LeChatelier's principle.

A Closer Look: Condensation Polymers

A commercially important esterification reaction is condensation polymerization, in which a reaction occurs between a dicarboxylic acid and a dihydric alcohol (diol), with the elimination of water. Such a reaction yields an ester that contains a free (unreacted) carboxyl group at one end and a free alcohol group at the other end. Further condensation reactions then occur, producing polyester polymers.

The most important polyester, polyethylene terephthalate (PET), is made from terephthalic acid and ethylene glycol monomers:



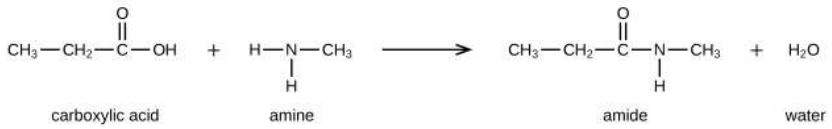
Polyester molecules make excellent fibers and are used in many fabrics. A knitted polyester tube, which is biologically inert, can be used in surgery to repair or replace diseased sections of blood vessels. PET is used to make bottles for soda pop and other beverages. It is also formed into films called Mylar. When magnetically coated, Mylar tape is used in audio- and videocassettes. Synthetic arteries can be made from PET, polytetrafluoroethylene, and other polymers.

Amide Formation

When a carboxylic acid reacts with ammonia (NH_3) a *primary amide* is formed:

$$\underset{\text{Acetic acid}}{CH_3COOH} + NH_3 \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Acetamide}}{CH_3CONH_2} + H_2O$$

When a carboxylic acid reacts with primary or secondary amines, secondary or tertiary amides are produced, respectively.



Need another figure here

Tertiary amines do not have a hydrogen attached to the nitrogen and therefore do not form amides when mixed with carboxylic acids. However, an acid-base reaction does occur with the amine accepting a proton (acts as a base) and the carboxylic acid donating a proton. In this case the ammonium and carboxylate salts are formed:

Need another figure here

Note Polyamides

Just as the reaction of a diol and a diacid forms a polyester, the reaction of a diacid and a diamine yields a polyamide. The two difunctional monomers often employed are adipic acid and 1,6-hexanediamine. The monomers condense by splitting out water to form a new product, which is still difunctional and thus can react further to yield a polyamide polymer.

$$\underset{\text{1,6-Hexanediamine}}{n\,H_2NCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2NH_2} + \underset{\text{Adipic acid}}{n\,HOOCCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2COOH} \longrightarrow$$

$$\underset{\text{Nylon 66 (a polyamide)}}{\text{—}HN[COCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CONHCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2NH]_nCO\text{—}} + 2n\,H_2O$$

Some polyamides are known as *nylons*. Nylons are among the most widely used synthetic fibers—for example, they are used in ropes, sails, carpets, clothing, tires, brushes, and parachutes. They also can be molded into blocks for use in electrical equipment, gears, bearings, and valves.

17.4: Reactions of Carboxylic Acids - Ester and Amide Formation is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **15.7: Preparation of Esters** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **15.15: Formation of Amides** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

17.5: Aspirin and Other Over-the-Counter Carboxylic Acid

17.5: Aspirin and Other Over-the-Counter Carboxylic Acid is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

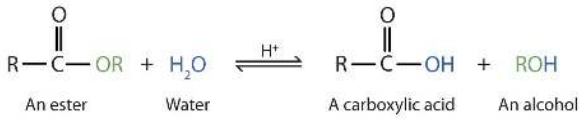
17.6: Hydrolysis of Esters and Amides

Learning Objectives

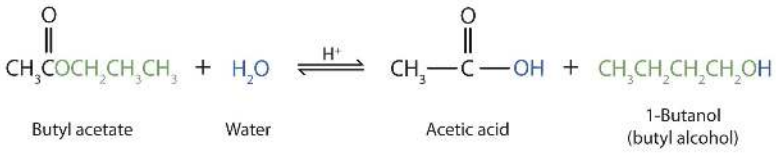
- Describe the typical reaction that takes place with esters.
- Identify the products of an acidic hydrolysis of an ester.
- Identify the products of a basic hydrolysis of an ester.

Esters are neutral compounds, unlike the acids from which they are formed. In typical reactions, the alkoxy (OR′) group of an ester is replaced by another group. One such reaction is hydrolysis, literally "splitting with water." The hydrolysis of esters is catalyzed by either an acid or a base.

Acidic hydrolysis is simply the reverse of esterification. The ester is heated with a large excess of water containing a strong-acid catalyst. Like esterification, the reaction is reversible and does not go to completion.



As a specific example, butyl acetate and water react to form acetic acid and 1-butanol. The reaction is reversible and does not go to completion.

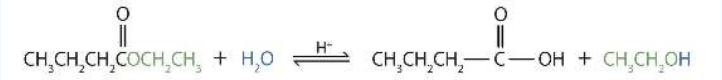


Example 17.6.1

Write an equation for the acidic hydrolysis of ethyl butyrate ($CH_3CH_2CH_2COOCH_2CH_3$) and name the products.

Solution

Remember that in acidic hydrolysis, water (HOH) splits the ester bond. The H of HOH joins to the oxygen atom in the OR part of the original ester, and the OH of HOH joins to the carbonyl carbon atom:

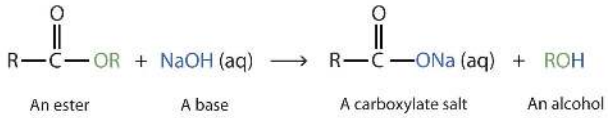


The products are butyric acid (butanoic acid) and ethanol.

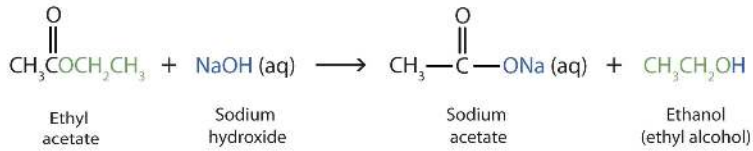
Exercise 17.6.1

Write an equation for the acidic hydrolysis of methyl butanoate and name the products.

When a base (such as sodium hydroxide [NaOH] or potassium hydroxide [KOH]) is used to hydrolyze an ester, the products are a carboxylate salt and an alcohol. Because soaps are prepared by the alkaline hydrolysis of fats and oils, alkaline hydrolysis of esters is called saponification (Latin *sapon*, meaning "soap," and *facere*, meaning "to make"). In a saponification reaction, the base is a reactant, not simply a catalyst. The reaction goes to completion:



As a specific example, ethyl acetate and NaOH react to form sodium acetate and ethanol:

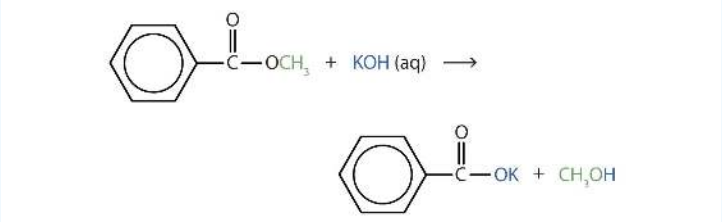


Example 17.6.2

Write an equation for the hydrolysis of methyl benzoate in a potassium hydroxide solution.

Solution

In basic hydrolysis, the molecule of the base splits the ester linkage. The acid portion of the ester ends up as the *salt* of the acid (in this case, the potassium salt). The alcohol portion of the ester ends up as the free alcohol.

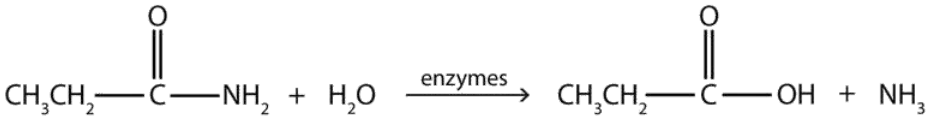


Exercise 17.6.2

Write the equation for the hydrolysis of ethyl propanoate in a sodium hydroxide solution.

Hydrolysis of Amides

Generally, amides resist hydrolysis in plain water, even after prolonged heating. In the presence of added acid or base, however, hydrolysis proceeds at a moderate rate. In living cells, amide hydrolysis is catalyzed by enzymes. Amide hydrolysis is illustrated in the following example:



> *Hydrolysis of an amide in acid solution actually gives a carboxylic acid and the salt of ammonia or an amine (the ammonia or amine initially formed is neutralized by the acid). Basic hydrolysis gives a salt of the carboxylic acid and ammonia or an amine.*

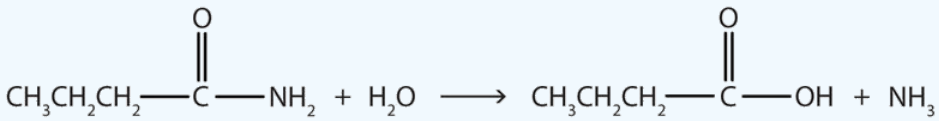
Example 17.6.1

Write the equation for the hydrolysis of each compound.

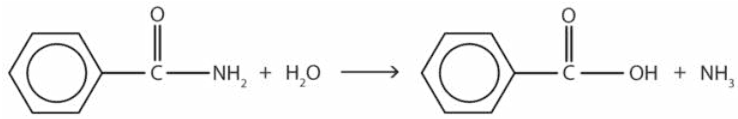
a. butyramide
b. benzamide

Solution

a. The hydrolysis of a simple amide produces an organic acid and ammonia. Butyramide thus yields butyric acid and ammonia.



- The hydrolysis of an amide produces an organic acid and ammonia. Benzamide thus yields benzoic acid and ammonia.



Exercise 17.6.1

Write the equation for the hydrolysis of each compound.

a. propionamide (propanamide)
b. hexanamide

Career Focus: Athletic Trainer

Athletic training is an allied health-care profession recognized by the American Medical Association. The athletic trainer's role is to recognize, evaluate, and provide immediate care for athletic injuries; prevent athletic injuries by taping, bandaging, and bracing vulnerable body parts; make referrals to medical doctors when necessary; and rehabilitate injured athletes. Athletic trainers work in high schools, colleges, and other organizations where athletics programs are found. Athletic trainers usually have a degree from an accredited athletic training program whose curriculum includes such basic science courses as biology, chemistry, and physics. These studies provide the necessary background for more applied courses, such as anatomy and physiology, exercise physiology, kinesiology, and nutrition. Knowledge of chemistry is necessary for understanding pharmacological and medical terminology. For example, athletic trainers must understand the action of numerous drugs, many of which are esters, amines, or amides like those mentioned in this chapter.

Athletic trainers may have administrative duties, such as the responsibility for ordering supplies. They also need to be able to evaluate nutritional supplements because providing the wrong one can get an athlete banned from competition and may bring sanctions against a school. In short, the athletic trainer is responsible for the overall health and well-being of the athletes in his or her charge.

Summary

Hydrolysis is a most important reaction of esters. Acidic hydrolysis of an ester gives a carboxylic acid and an alcohol. Basic hydrolysis of an ester gives a carboxylate salt and an alcohol.

17.6: Hydrolysis of Esters and Amides is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **15.8: Hydrolysis of Esters** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **15.16: Chemical Properties of Amides- Hydrolysis** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

17.7: Polyamides and Polyesters

Learning Objectives

- Describe how polyamides and polyesters are formed.

Animal intestines and silk were used for all guitar strings for centuries, until modern technology and changes in musical taste brought about significant changes. There are two major types of guitar strings in use today. Steel strings (first developed around 1900) are found on acoustic and electric guitars. They have a bright, crisp sound that lends itself well to diverse music such as jazz, rock 'n' roll, and bluegrass. Nylon strings are a more recent development. During World War II, the silk and animal products needed to manufacture steel guitar strings were not available. Nylon quickly proved to be a more-than-adequate substitute. Now nylon strings are found on all classical guitars. Their sound is somewhat softer than the steel strings, making the tone quality well-suited for the classical genre of music.

Polymerization - Condensation Polymers

A condensation polymer is a polymer formed by condensation reactions. Monomers of condensation polymers must contain two functional groups so that each monomer can link up with two other monomers. One type of condensation polymer is called a polyamide.

One pair of monomers that can form a *polyamide* is that of adipic acid and hexanediamine. Adipic acid is a carboxylic acid with two carboxyl groups on either end of the molecule. Hexanediamine has amino groups on either end of a six-carbon chain. When these molecules react with each other, a molecule of water is eliminated, classifying it as a condensation reaction (see figure below).

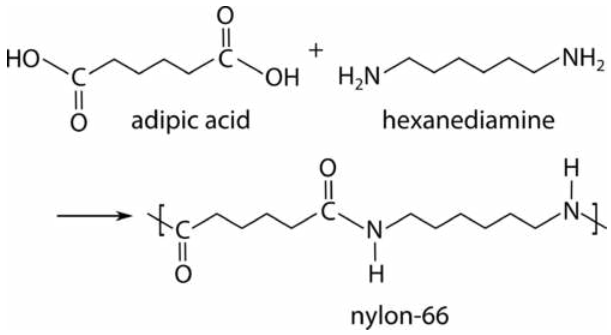
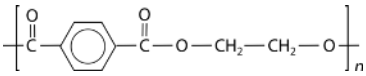


Figure 17.7.2: Nylon synthesis.

The polymer that results from the repetition of the condensation reaction is a polyamide called nylon-66. Nylon-66 was first invented in 1935 and has been used in all sorts of products. Polyamides, including Nylon-66, are commonly found in fibers and clothing, cooking utensils, fishing line, and carpeting—among many other applications.

Figure 17.7.3: Nylon spatula.

Polyester is another common type of condensation polymer. Recall that esters are formed from the reaction of an alcohol with a carboxylic acid. When both the acid and alcohol have two functional groups, the ester is capable of being polymerized. One such polyester is called polyethylene terephthalate (PET) and is formed from the reaction of ethylene glycol with terephthalic acid. The structure of PET is shown below.



PET is used in tires, photographic film, food packaging, and clothing. Polyester fabric is used in permanent-press clothing. Its resistance to wrinkling comes from the cross-linking of the polymer strands.

Summary

- A condensation polymer is a polymer formed by condensation reactions.
- Polyamides and polyesters are common types of condensation polymers.

17.7: Polyamides and Polyesters is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

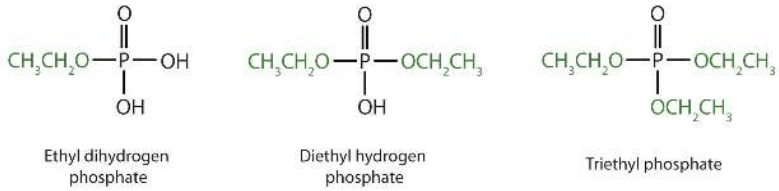
- **25.20: Polymerization - Condensation Polymers** by CK-12 Foundation is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

17.8: Phosphoric Acid Derivatives

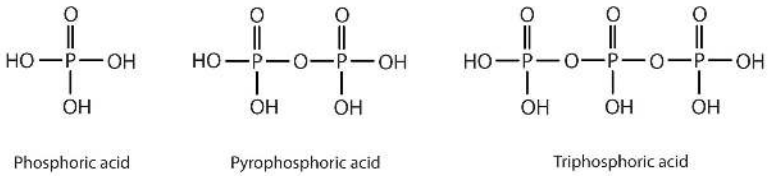
Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

Just as carboxylic acids do, inorganic acids such as nitric acid (HNO_3), sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4), and phosphoric acid (H_3PO_4) also form esters. The esters of phosphoric acid are especially important in biochemistry. A phosphoric acid molecule can form a monoalkyl, a dialkyl, or a trialkyl ester by reaction with one, two, or three molecules of an alcohol.

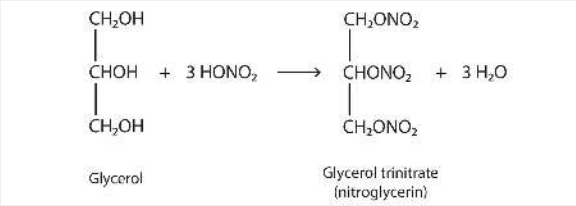


Esters of pyrophosphoric acid and triphosphoric acid are also important in biochemistry.



Esters of these acids are present in every plant and animal cell. They are biochemical intermediates in the transformation of food into usable energy. The bonds between phosphate units in adenosine triphosphate (ATP) are called *phosphoanhydride* bonds. These are high-energy bonds that store energy from the metabolism of foods. Hydrolysis of ATP releases energy as it is needed for biochemical processes (for instance, for muscle contraction). Phosphate esters are also important structural constituents of phospholipids and nucleic acids.

The explosive nitroglycerin (glyceryl trinitrate) is an ester formed from glycerol and nitric acid. It is used in medicine to relieve chest pain in heart disease.



Summary

Inorganic acids such as H_3PO_4 form esters. The esters of phosphoric acid are especially important in biochemistry.

17.8: Phosphoric Acid Derivatives is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

18: Amino Acids and Proteins

18.1: An Introduction to Biochemistry
18.2: Protein Structure and Function- An Overview
18.3: Amino Acids
18.4: Acid-Base Properties of Amino Acids
18.5: Handedness
18.6: Molecular Handedness and Amino Acids
18.7: Primary Protein Structure
18.8: Shape-Determining Interactions in Proteins
18.9: Secondary Protein Structure
18.10: Tertiary Protein Structure
18.11: Quaternary Protein Structure
18.12: Chemical Properties of Proteins

18: Amino Acids and Proteins is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

18.1: An Introduction to Biochemistry

Learning Objectives

- Explain what a biomolecule is and list the four main types.

Biochemistry is the study of the molecules of life, (**biomolecules**); those that structurally make up living organisms and function to keep them alive. Although the complexity of biomolecules ranges from individual small molecules, such as glycine, to very large complexes made up of multiple molecules linked together, like ATP synthase, most biomolecules can be categorized into for main groups based on their structural similarities: *carbohydrates*, *proteins*, *lipids*, or *nucleic acids*. There are also many other small molecules and ions that play a wide variety of roles in the cell, ranging chemical messengers (or signals), to toxins produced as a means of defense against invaders, to coordination complexes that play important rolls in protein function.

Now that you have learned the basics of general and organic chemistry, you are ready to apply your knowledge to understanding the chemistry of these biomolecules. You will recognize some of the organic functional groups in these biomolecules, which will help you predict the physical and chemical properties of these new molecules. Living cells are very complex, however, the same principles that govern chemistry apply to all of biochemistry.

18.1: An Introduction to Biochemistry is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

18.2: Protein Structure and Function- An Overview

Learning Objectives

- Describe the different structural classes of proteins.
- Understand the different functional roles of proteins.

The ability to serve a variety of functions is characteristic of most biomolecules. Nowhere is this versatility better exemplified than by the proteins. Perhaps because of their many functions, proteins are the most abundant organic molecules in living cells, constituting more than 50 percent of the mass once water is removed. It is estimated that the human body contains well over a million different kinds of protein, and even a single-cell organism contains thousands. Each of these is a polymer of amino acids which has a highly specific composition, a unique molecular weight (usually in the range from 6000 to 1 000 000) and its own sequence of different amino acids along the polymer chain.

Proteins may be subdivided on the basis of their *molecular shape* or *conformation*. In the **fibrous proteins**, long polymer chains are arranged parallel or nearly parallel to one another to give long fibers or sheets. This arrangement results in physically tough materials which do not dissolve in water. The fibrous proteins are fundamental components of structural tissues such as tendons, bone, hair, horn, leather, claws, and feathers.

By contrast, polymer chains of the **globular proteins** fold back on themselves to produce compact, nearly spherical shapes. Most globular proteins are water soluble and hence are relatively mobile within a cell. Some examples are enzymes, antibodies, hormones, toxins, and substances such as hemoglobin whose function is to transport simple molecules or even electrons from one place to another. The enzyme trypsin, is a typical globular protein.

Another class of proteins are the **membrane proteins**, which, as the name would suggest, reside in a cell's lipid bilayer membrane. Such proteins can act as channels for ions or other molecules unable to pass through the lipid bilayer; as signal transducers, able to respond to signal molecules on one side of a membrane to begin a molecular response on the other side of the membrane; or as anchors of other molecules to the cell membrane, to name a few exemplars of membrane protein function. Because these proteins interface with non-polar portions of the lipid bilayer, they do no maintain function and structure in an aqueous solution, making them far more difficult to study than globular proteins or fibrous proteins.

Proteins are also classified based on their function as listed in Table 18.2.1 below. As you will see in the following chapters, the structure and function of a protein are directly related, meaning that if a protein adopts a certain structure, the general function of that protein can be predicted with a good amount of certainty.

Table 18.2.1: Classes of Proteins by Function

Type	Function	Example
Enzymes	Catalyze biochemical reactions	*Amylase* – helps digest carbohydrates
Hormone proteins	Regulate and coordinate cell functions	*Insulin* – controls the amount of sugar (glucose) in the blood
Storage proteins	Storage and release of essential substances	*Myoglobin* – stores oxygen in muscle tissue
Transport proteins	Carries substances through the body	*Hemoglobin* – transports oxygen between the lungs and other tissues
Structural proteins	Provides structural shape and support	*Keratin* – main structural component of hair, nails, feathers, hooves, etc.
Defense proteins	Protects the body against foreign invaders	*Immunoglobulin* – recognizes and binds to foreign matter, aiding in destruction
Contractile proteins	Mediate contractile processes, i.e., movement	*Actin* and *Myosin* – control the movement of muscles

18.2: Protein Structure and Function- An Overview is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **20.11: Proteins** by Ed Vitz, John W. Moore, Justin Shorb, Xavier Prat-Resina, Tim Wendorff, & Adam Hahn is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

18.3: Amino Acids

Learning Objectives

- To recognize amino acids and classify them based on the characteristics of their side chains.
- Identify which amino acids are chiral.

The **proteins** in all living species, from bacteria to humans, are *polymers* constructed from the same set of 20 **amino acids**. Humans can synthesize only about half of the needed amino acids; the remainder must be obtained from the diet and are known as essential amino acids. However, two additional amino acids have been found in limited quantities in proteins: Selenocysteine was discovered in 1986, while pyrrolysine was discovered in 2002.

Amino Acid Structure

Every amino acid contains an amino group, ($-NH_2$), a carboxyl group, (–COOH), and a **side chain** or R group, which are all attached to the alpha (α-) carbon (the one directly bonded to the carboxyl functional group). Therefore, amino acids are commonly called alpha-amino (α-amino) acids. Figure 18.3.1 below shows the structure of a generic α-amino acid.

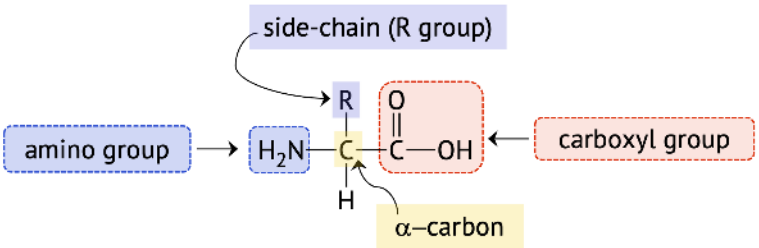


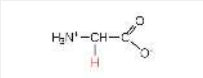
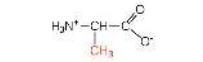
Figure 18.3.1 An α-amino acid. The three parts to an amino acid include the amino group, the carboxyl group, and the side-chain or R group all attached to the α-carbon. The R group is the part that distinguishes one amino acid from the next.

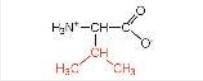
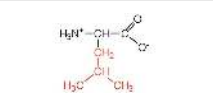
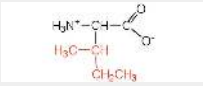
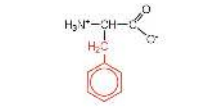
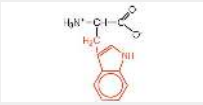
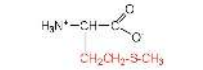
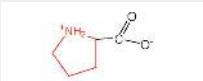
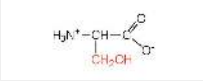
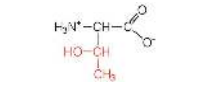
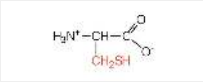
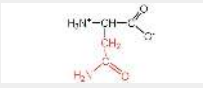
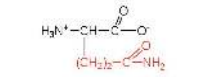
Amino Acid Side Chains

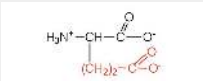
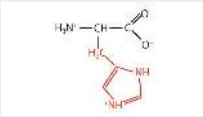
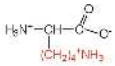
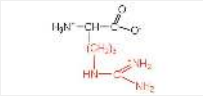
Amino acid side chains or R groups can range from a single hydrogen atom (as in glycine), to a simple hydrocarbon chain, to a hydrocarbon containing a functional group. Each R group has differences in size, shape, solubility, and ionization properties, which contributes to the unique properties of an individual amino acid, and can have an effect on the overall structure and function of a protein.

Table 18.3.1 below lists the 20 common amino acids along with their names, their three- and one-letter codes, structures, and distinctive features. The three-letter codes are generally the first three letters of the amino acid name except in a few cases, such as isoleucine (Ile) and tryptophan (Trp). Similarly, the one-letter code is usually the first letter in the amino acid name, but where the letter is not unique, a letter that is phonetically similar the amino acid name is used: F for *F*enylalanine, R for a*R*ginine, and W for t*W*iptophan. This table also groups the amino acids according to whether the side chain at neutral pH is *nonpolar*, *polar uncharged*, *positively charged*, or *negatively charged*.

Table 18.3.1: Common Amino Acids Found in Proteins. (Isoelectric points are explained in a later section.)

Common Name	Three-letter (one-letter) Code	Systematic (IUPAC) Name	Structural Formula (*at pH 6*)	Isoelectric Point (pI)	Distinctive Feature
Amino acids with a nonpolar R group					
glycine	Gly (G)	aminoethanoic acid		6.0	the only amino acid lacking a chiral carbon
alanine	Ala (A)	2-aminopropanoic acid		6.0	a methyl group, it is the second smallest side chain

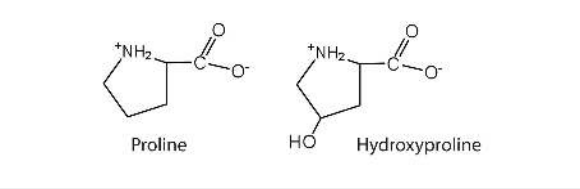
Common Name	Three-letter (one-letter) Code	Systematic (IUPAC) Name	Structural Formula (*at pH 6*)	Isoelectric Point (pI)	Distinctive Feature
valine	Val (V)	2-amino-3-methylbutanoic acid		6.0	a branched-chain amino acid
leucine	Leu (L)	2-amino-4-methylpentanoic acid		6.0	a branched-chain amino acid
isoleucine	Ile (I)	2-amino-3-methylpentanoic acid		6.0	an essential amino acid because most animals cannot synthesize branched-chain amino acids
phenylalanine	Phe (F)	2-amino-3-phenylpropanoic acid		5.5	also classified as an aromatic amino acid
tryptophan	Trp (W)	2-Amino-3-(1*H*-indol-3-yl)-propanoic acid		5.9	also classified as an aromatic amino acid
methionine	Met (M)	2-amino-4-(methylthio)butanoic acid		5.7	side chain functions as a methyl group donor
proline	Pro (P)	pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid		6.3	contains a secondary amine group; referred to as an *α-imino acid*
Amino acids with a polar but neutral R group					
serine	Ser (S)	2-amino-3-hydroxypropanoic acid		5.7	found at the active site of many enzymes
threonine	Thr (T)	2-amino-3-hydroxybutanoic acid		5.6	named for its similarity to the sugar threose
cysteine	Cys (C)	2-amino-3-mercaptopropanoic acid		5.0	oxidation of two cysteine molecules yields *cystine*
tyrosine	Tyr (Y)	2-amino-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-propanoic acid		5.7	also classified as an aromatic amino acid
asparagine	Asn (N)	2-amino-3-carbamoylpropanoic acid		5.4	the amide of aspartic acid
glutamine	Gln (Q)	2-amino-4-carbamoylbutanoic acid		5.7	the amide of glutamic acid

Common Name	Three-letter (one-letter) Code	Systematic (IUPAC) Name	Structural Formula (*at pH 6*)	Isoelectric Point (pI)	Distinctive Feature
Amino acids with a negatively charged R group					
aspartic acid	Asp (D)	2-aminobutanedioic acid		3.0	carboxyl groups are ionized at physiological pH; also known as aspartate
glutamic acid	Glu (E)	2-aminopentanedioic acid		3.2	carboxyl groups are ionized at physiological pH; also known as glutamate
Amino acids with a positively charged R group					
histidine	His (H)	2-Amino-3-(1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-propanoic acid		7.6	the only amino acid whose R group has a pK_a (6.0) near physiological pH
lysine	Lys (K)	2,6-diaminohexanoic acid		9.7	is somewhat amphipathic due to the long hydrocarbon tail and positively charged amino group on the ϵ carbon
arginine	Arg (R)	2-amino-5-guanidinopentanoic acid		10.8	almost as strong a base as sodium hydroxide

Note: Interesting Facts About Amino Acids

The first amino acid to be isolated was asparagine in 1806. It was obtained from protein found in asparagus juice (hence the name). Glycine, the major amino acid found in gelatin, was named for its sweet taste (Greek *glykys*, meaning “sweet”). Glutamic acid is named as such because it was first isolated from gluten. The crystalline salt of glutamic acid is called monosodium glutamate (MSG), which is naturally occuring in some foods but is also added to as a savory or "umami" flavor enhancer.

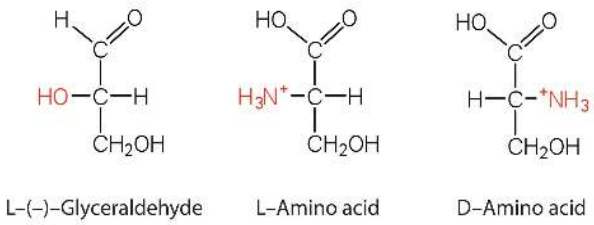
In some cases an amino acid found in a protein is actually a *derivative* of one of the common 20 amino acids (one such derivative is hydroxyproline). The modification of proline occurs *after* the amino acid has been assembled into a protein.



Chirality of Amino Acids

Notice in Table 18.3.1 that glycine is the only amino acid whose (\alpha\)-carbon is *not* chiral, in other words the molecule and the mirror-image of glycine are identical. All other amino acids have two forms that are mirror images of each other, they are

enantiomers. As you can see in the figure below, the "left-handed" form of the molecule is known as the L-amino acid and the "right-handed" form is the D-amino acid.



Summary

Amino acids can be classified based on the characteristics of their distinctive side chains as nonpolar, polar but uncharged, negatively charged, or positively charged. The amino acids found in proteins are L-amino acids.

18.3: Amino Acids is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

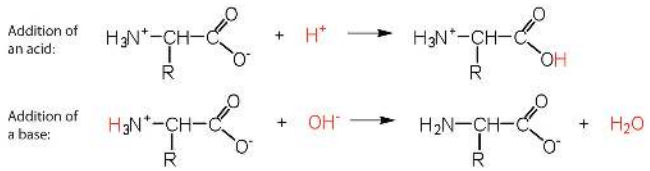
- **18.1: Properties of Amino Acids** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

18.4: Acid-Base Properties of Amino Acids

Learning Objectives

- To explain how an amino acid can act as both an acid and a base.

The structure of an amino acid allows it to act as both an acid and a base. An amino acid has this ability because at a certain pH value (different for each amino acid) nearly all the amino acid molecules exist as zwitterions. If acid is added to a solution containing the zwitterion, the carboxylate group captures a hydrogen (H^+) ion, and the amino acid becomes positively charged. If base is added, ion removal of the H^+ ion from the amino group of the zwitterion produces a negatively charged amino acid. In both circumstances, the amino acid acts to maintain the pH of the system—that is, to remove the added acid (H^+) or base (OH^-) from solution.

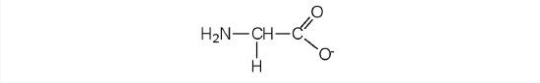


Example 18.4.1

a. Draw the structure for the anion formed when glycine (at neutral pH) reacts with a base.
b. Draw the structure for the cation formed when glycine (at neutral pH) reacts with an acid.

Solution

a. The base removes H^+ from the protonated amine group.



- The acid adds H^+ to the carboxylate group.

Exercise 18.4.1

a. Draw the structure for the cation formed when valine (at neutral pH) reacts with an acid.
b. Draw the structure for the anion formed when valine (at neutral pH) reacts with a base.

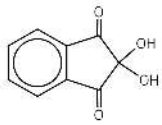
The particular pH at which a given amino acid exists in solution as a zwitterion is called the isoelectric point (pI). At its pI, the positive and negative charges on the amino acid balance, and the molecule as a whole is electrically neutral. The amino acids whose side chains are always neutral have isoelectric points ranging from 5.0 to 6.5. The basic amino acids (which have positively charged side chains at neutral pH) have relatively high examples. Acidic amino acids (which have negatively charged side chains at neutral pH) have quite low examples (Table 18.4.1).

Table 18.4.1: ExampIes of Some Representative Amino Acids

Amino Acid	Classification	pI
alanine	nonpolar	6.0
valine	nonpolar	6.0
serine	polar, uncharged	5.7
threonine	polar, uncharged	6.5

Amino Acid	Classification	pI
arginine	positively charged (basic)	10.8
histidine	positively charged (basic)	7.6
lysine	positively charged (basic)	9.8
aspartic acid	negatively charged (acidic)	3.0
glutamic acid	negatively charged (acidic)	3.2

Amino acids undergo reactions characteristic of carboxylic acids and amines. The reactivity of these functional groups is particularly important in linking amino acids together to form peptides and proteins, as you will see later in this chapter. Simple chemical tests that are used to detect amino acids take advantage of the reactivity of these functional groups. An example is the ninhydrin test in which the amine functional group of α-amino acids reacts with ninhydrin to form purple-colored compounds. Ninhydrin is used to detect fingerprints because it reacts with amino acids from the proteins in skin cells transferred to the surface by the individual leaving the fingerprint.



Ninhydrin

Summary

Amino acids can act as both an acid and a base due to the presence of the amino and carboxyl functional groups. The pH at which a given amino acid exists in solution as a zwitterion is called the *isoelectric point* (pI).

18.4: Acid-Base Properties of Amino Acids is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

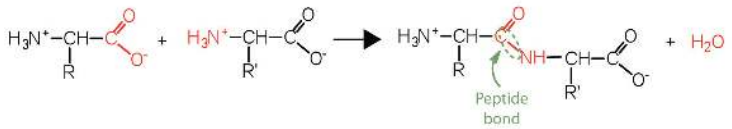
- **18.2: Reactions of Amino Acids** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

18.5: Handedness

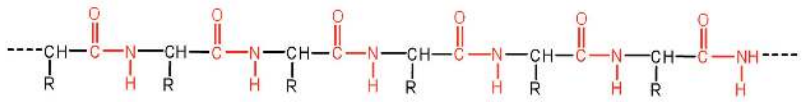
Learning Objectives

- Explain how a peptide is formed from individual amino acids.
- Explain why the sequence of amino acids in a protein is important.

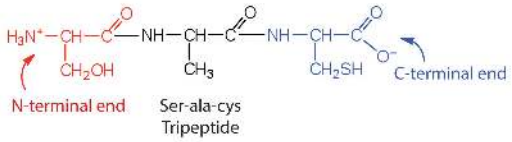
Two or more amino acids can join together into chains called peptides. In an earlier chapter, we discussed the reaction between ammonia and a carboxylic acid to form an amide. In a similar reaction, the amino group on one amino acid molecule reacts with the carboxyl group on another, releasing a molecule of water and forming an amide linkage:



An amide bond joining two amino acid units is called a **peptide bond**. Note that the product molecule still has a reactive amino group on the left and a reactive carboxyl group on the right. These can react with additional amino acids to lengthen the peptide. The process can continue until thousands of units have joined, resulting in large proteins.



A chain consisting of only two amino acid units is called a *dipeptide*; a chain consisting of three is a *tripeptide*. By convention, peptide and protein structures are depicted with the amino acid whose amino group is free (the **amino-terminal** or N-terminal end) on the left and the amino acid with a free carboxyl group (the **carboxyl-terminal** or C-terminal end) to the right. Individual amino acids joined in a chain are called **residues**.



The general term *peptide* refers to an amino acid chain of unspecified length. However, chains of about 50 amino acids or more are usually called proteins or polypeptides. In its physiologically active form, a protein may be composed of one or more polypeptide chains.

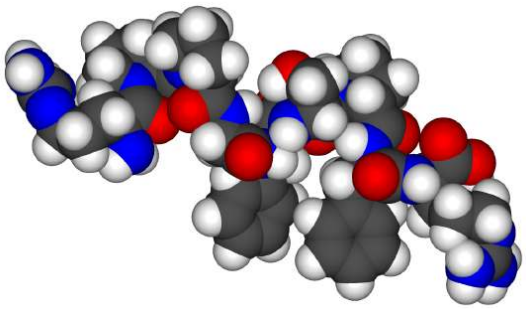


Figure 18.5.1: Space-filling model of bradykinin. (Public Domain; Fvasconcellos)

Note: Order is Important

For peptides and proteins to be physiologically active, it is not enough that they incorporate certain amounts of specific amino acids. The order, or *sequence*, in which the amino acids are connected is also of critical importance. Bradykinin is a nine-amino acid peptide (Figure 18.5.1) produced in the blood that has the following amino acid sequence:

arg-pro-pro-gly-phe-ser-pro-phe-arg

This peptide lowers blood pressure, stimulates smooth muscle tissue, increases capillary permeability, and causes pain. When the order of amino acids in bradykinin is reversed,

arg-phe-pro-ser-phe-gly-pro-pro-arg

the peptide resulting from this synthesis shows none of the activity of bradykinin.

Just as millions of different words are spelled with our 26-letter English alphabet, millions of different proteins are made with the 20 common amino acids. However, just as the English alphabet can be used to write gibberish, amino acids can be put together in the *wrong sequence* to produce nonfunctional proteins. Although the correct sequence is ordinarily of utmost importance, it is not always absolutely required. Just as you can sometimes make sense of incorrectly spelled English words, a protein with a small percentage of "incorrect" amino acids may continue to function. However, it rarely functions as well as a protein having the correct sequence. There are also instances in which seemingly minor errors of sequence have disastrous effects. For example, in some people, every molecule of hemoglobin (a protein in the blood that transports oxygen) has a single incorrect amino acid unit out of about 300 (a single valine replaces a glutamic acid). That "minor" error is responsible for sickle cell anemia, an inherited condition that usually is fatal.

Summary

The amino group of one amino acid can react with the carboxyl group on another amino acid to form a peptide bond that links the two amino acids together. Additional amino acids can be added on through the formation of addition peptide (amide) bonds. A sequence of amino acids in a peptide or protein is written with the N-terminal amino acid first and the C-terminal amino acid at the end (writing left to right).

Concept Review Exercises

1. Distinguish between the N-terminal amino acid and the C-terminal amino acid of a peptide or protein.
2. Describe the difference between an amino acid and a peptide.
3. Amino acid units in a protein are connected by peptide bonds. What is another name for the functional group linking the amino acids?

Answers

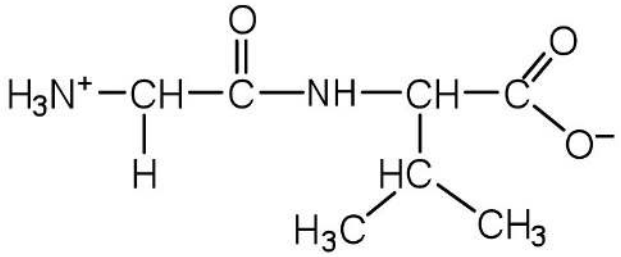
1. The N-terminal end is the end of a peptide or protein whose amino group is free (not involved in the formation of a peptide bond), while the C-terminal end has a free carboxyl group.
2. A peptide is composed of two or more amino acids. Amino acids are the building blocks of peptides.
3. amide bond

Exercises

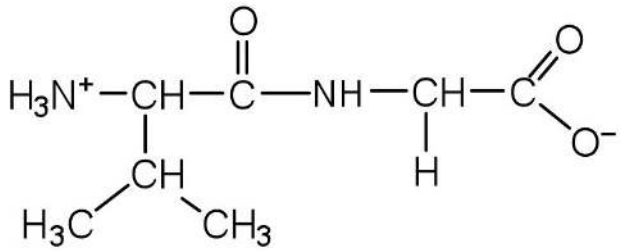
1. Draw the structure for each peptide.
   a. gly-val
   b. val-gly
2. Draw the structure for cys-val-ala.
3. Identify the C- and N-terminal amino acids for the peptide lys-val-phe-gly-arg-cys.
4. Identify the C- and N-terminal amino acids for the peptide asp-arg-val-tyr-ile-his-pro-phe.

Answers

1. a.



b.



3. C-terminal amino acid: cys; N-terminal amino acid: lys

18.5: Handedness is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **18.3: Peptides** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

18.6: Molecular Handedness and Amino Acids

18.06: Molecular Handedness and Amino Acids

18.6: Molecular Handedness and Amino Acids is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

18.7: Primary Protein Structure

Learning Objectives

- Describe primary protein structure.
- Explain how sequence can affect function.

Each of the thousands of naturally occurring proteins has its own characteristic amino acid composition and sequence that result in a unique three-dimensional shape. Since the 1950s, scientists have determined the amino acid sequences and three-dimensional conformation of numerous proteins and thus obtained important clues on how each protein performs its specific function in the body.

Levels of Protein Structure

The structure of proteins is generally described as having four organizational levels. The first of these is the **primary structure**, which is the number and sequence of amino acids in a protein's polypeptide chain or chains, beginning with the free amino group and maintained by the peptide bonds connecting each amino acid to the next. The primary structure of insulin, composed of 51 amino acids, is shown in Figure 18.7.1.

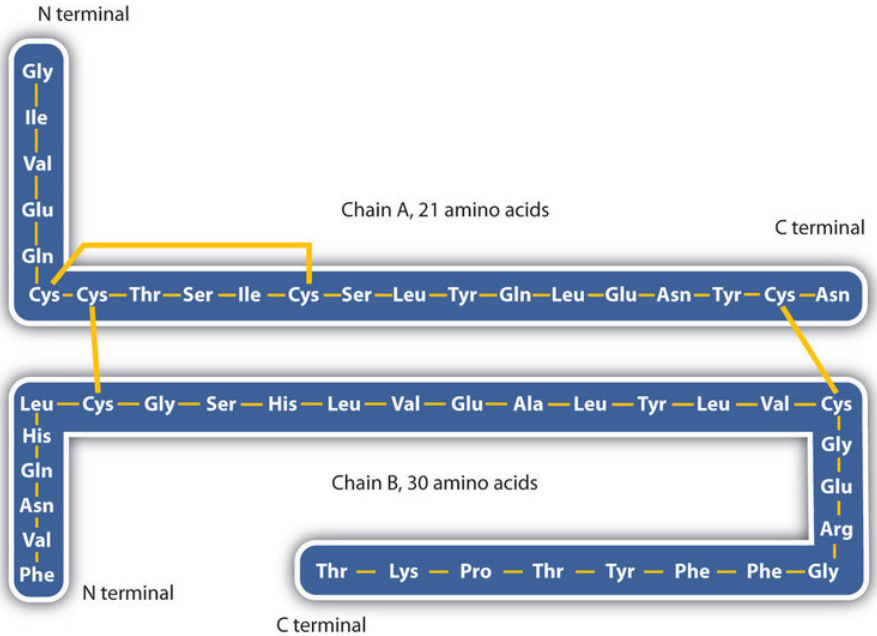


Figure 18.7.1: Primary Structure of Human Insulin. Human insulin, whose amino acid sequence is shown here, is a hormone that is required for the proper metabolism of glucose. (CC BY-SA-NC 3.0; anonymous)

18.7: Primary Protein Structure is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **18.4: Proteins** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

18.8: Shape-Determining Interactions in Proteins

18.8: Shape-Determining Interactions in Proteins is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

18.9: Secondary Protein Structure

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

A protein molecule is not a random tangle of polypeptide chains. Instead, the chains are arranged in unique but specific conformations. The term **secondary structure** refers to the fixed arrangement of the polypeptide backbone. On the basis of X ray studies, Linus Pauling and Robert Corey postulated that certain proteins or portions of proteins twist into a spiral or a helix. This helix is stabilized by *intrachain* hydrogen bonding between the carbonyl oxygen atom of one amino acid and the amide hydrogen atom four amino acids up the chain (located on the next turn of the helix) and is known as a right-handed α-helix. X ray data indicate that this helix makes one turn for every 3.6 amino acids, and the side chains of these amino acids project outward from the coiled backbone (Figure 18.9.1). The α-keratins, found in hair and wool, are exclusively α-helical in conformation. Some proteins, such as gamma globulin, chymotrypsin, and cytochrome c, have little or no helical structure. Others, such as hemoglobin and myoglobin, are helical in certain regions but not in others.

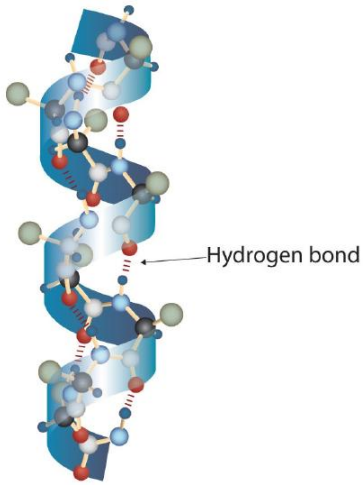


Figure 18.9.1 A Ball-and-Stick Model of an α-Helix. This ball-and-stick model shows the intrachain hydrogen bonding between carbonyl oxygen atoms and amide hydrogen atoms. Each turn of the helix spans 3.6 amino acids. Note that the side chains (represented as green spheres) point out from the helix.

Another common type of secondary structure, called the *β-pleated sheet conformation*, is a sheetlike arrangement in which two or more extended polypeptide chains (or separate regions on the same chain) are aligned side by side. The aligned segments can run either parallel or antiparallel—that is, the N-terminals can face in the same direction on adjacent chains or in different directions—and are connected by *interchain* hydrogen bonding (Figure 18.9.3). The β-pleated sheet is particularly important in structural proteins, such as silk fibroin. It is also seen in portions of many enzymes, such as carboxypeptidase A and lysozyme.

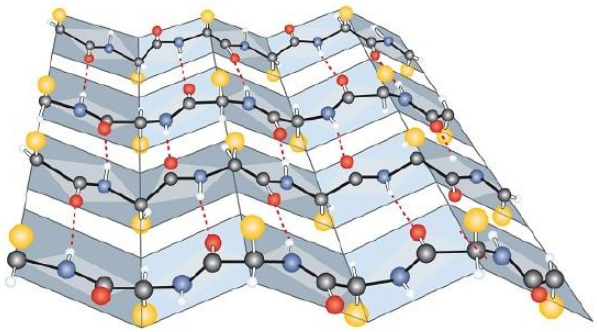


Figure 18.9.3: A Ball-and-Stick Model of the β-Pleated Sheet Structure in Proteins. The side chains extend above or below the sheet and alternate along the chain. The protein chains are held together by interchain hydrogen bonding.

18.9: Secondary Protein Structure is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **18.4: Proteins** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

18.10: Tertiary Protein Structure

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

Tertiary structure refers to the unique three-dimensional shape of the protein as a whole, which results from the folding and bending of the protein backbone. The tertiary structure is intimately tied to the proper biochemical functioning of the protein. Figure 18.10.1shows a depiction of the three-dimensional structure of insulin.

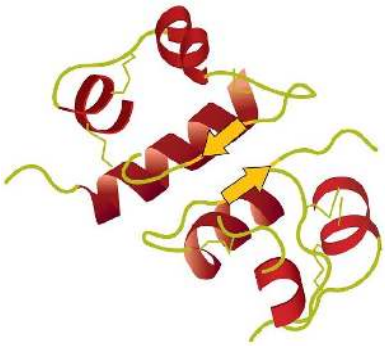
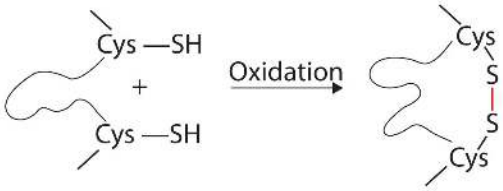


Figure 18.10.1: A Ribbon Model of the Three-Dimensional Structure of Insulin. The spiral regions represent sections of the polypeptide chain that have an α-helical structure, while the broad arrows represent β-pleated sheet structures.

Four major types of attractive interactions determine the shape and stability of the tertiary structure of proteins. You studied several of them previously.

1. Ionic bonding. Ionic bonds result from electrostatic attractions between positively and negatively charged side chains of amino acids. For example, the mutual attraction between an aspartic acid carboxylate ion and a lysine ammonium ion helps to maintain a particular folded area of a protein (part (a) of Figure 18.10.5).
2. Hydrogen bonding. Hydrogen bonding forms between a highly electronegative oxygen atom or a nitrogen atom and a hydrogen atom attached to another oxygen atom or a nitrogen atom, such as those found in polar amino acid side chains. Hydrogen bonding (as well as ionic attractions) is extremely important in both the intra- and intermolecular interactions of proteins (part (b) of Figure 18.10.5).
3. Disulfide linkages. Two cysteine amino acid units may be brought close together as the protein molecule folds. Subsequent oxidation and linkage of the sulfur atoms in the highly reactive sulfhydryl (SH) groups leads to the formation of cystine (part (c) of Figure 18.10.2). Intrachain disulfide linkages are found in many proteins, including insulin (yellow bars in Figure 18.10.1) and have a strong stabilizing effect on the tertiary structure.



4. Dispersion forces. Dispersion forces arise when a normally nonpolar atom becomes momentarily polar due to an uneven distribution of electrons, leading to an instantaneous dipole that induces a shift of electrons in a neighboring nonpolar atom. Dispersion forces are weak but can be important when other types of interactions are either missing or minimal (part (d) of Figure 18.10.2). This is the case with fibroin, the major protein in silk, in which a high proportion of amino acids in the protein have nonpolar side chains. The term *hydrophobic interaction* is often misused as a synonym for dispersion forces. Hydrophobic interactions arise because water molecules engage in hydrogen bonding with other water molecules (or groups in proteins capable of hydrogen bonding). Because nonpolar groups cannot engage in hydrogen bonding, the protein folds in such a way that these groups are buried in the interior part of the protein structure, minimizing their contact with water.

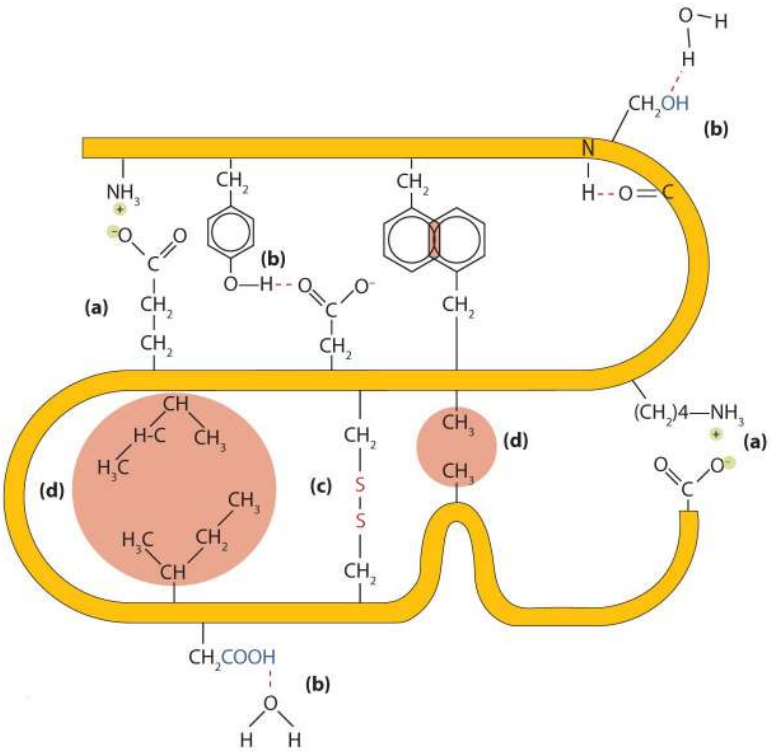


Figure 18.10.2: Tertiary Protein Structure Interactions. Four interactions stabilize the tertiary structure of a protein: (a) ionic bonding, (b) hydrogen bonding, (c) disulfide linkages, and (d) dispersion forces.

18.10: Tertiary Protein Structure is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **18.4: Proteins** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

18.11: Quaternary Protein Structure

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

When a protein contains more than one polypeptide chain, each chain is called a *subunit*. The arrangement of multiple subunits represents a fourth level of structure, the **quaternary structure** of a protein. Hemoglobin, with four polypeptide chains or subunits, is the most frequently cited example of a protein having quaternary structure (Figure 18.11.1). The quaternary structure of a protein is produced and stabilized by the same kinds of interactions that produce and maintain the tertiary structure. A schematic representation of the four levels of protein structure is in Figure 18.11.2

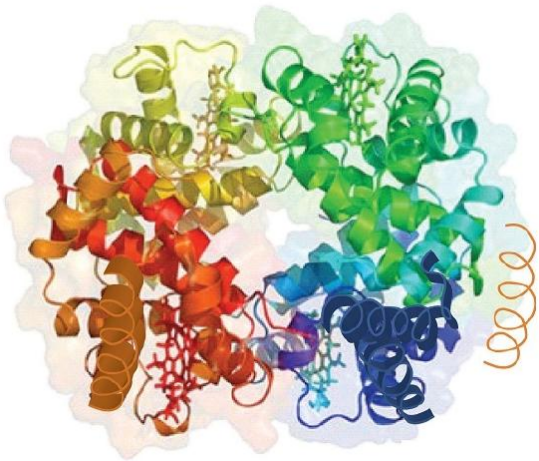


Figure 18.11.1 The Quaternary Structure of Hemoglobin. Hemoglobin is a protein that transports oxygen throughout the body.

Source: Image from the RCSB PDB (www.pdb.org) of PDB ID 1I3D (R.D. Kidd, H.M. Baker, A.J. Mathews, T. Brittain, E.N. Baker (2001) Oligomerization and ligand binding in a homotetrameric hemoglobin: two high-resolution crystal structures of hemoglobin Bart's (gamma(4)), a marker for alpha-thalassemia. Protein Sci. 1739–1749).

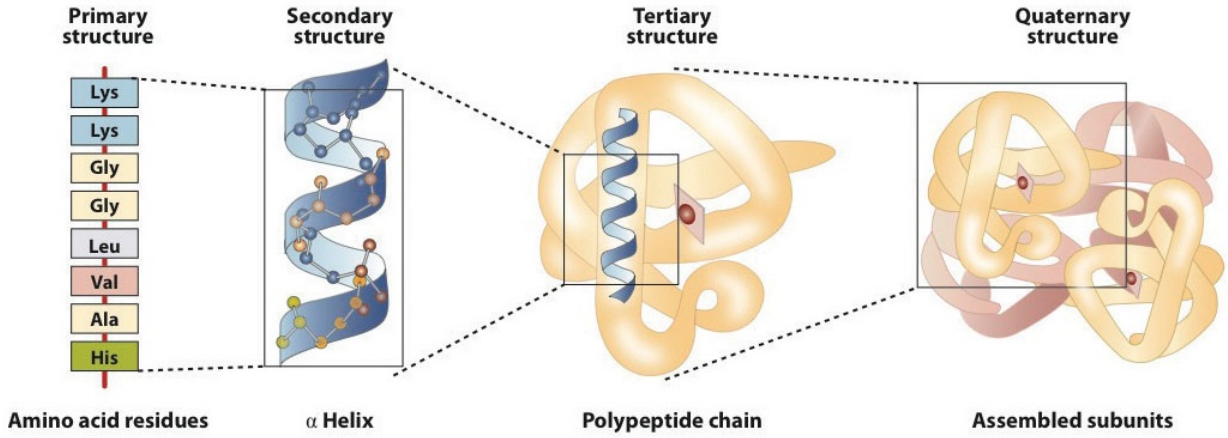


Figure 18.11.2: Levels of Structure in Proteins

The *primary structure* consists of the specific amino acid sequence. The resulting peptide chain can twist into an α-helix, which is one type of *secondary structure*. This helical segment is incorporated into the *tertiary structure* of the folded polypeptide chain. The single polypeptide chain is a subunit that constitutes the *quaternary structure* of a protein, such as hemoglobin that has four polypeptide chains.

18.11: Quaternary Protein Structure is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **18.4: Proteins** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

18.12: Chemical Properties of Proteins

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

Protein Hydrolysis

Protein Denaturation

The highly organized structures of proteins are truly masterworks of chemical architecture. But highly organized structures tend to have a certain delicacy, and this is true of proteins. Denaturation is the term used for any change in the three-dimensional structure of a protein that renders it incapable of performing its assigned function. A denatured protein cannot do its job. (Sometimes denaturation is equated with the precipitation or coagulation of a protein; our definition is a bit broader.) A wide variety of reagents and conditions, such as heat, organic compounds, pH changes, and heavy metal ions can cause protein denaturation (Figure 18.12.1).

Figure 18.12.1: Protein Denaturation Methods

Method	Effect on Protein Structure
Heat above 50°C or ultraviolet (UV) radiation	Heat or UV radiation supplies kinetic energy to protein molecules, causing their atoms to vibrate more rapidly and disrupting relatively weak hydrogen bonding and dispersion forces.
Use of organic compounds, such as ethyl alcohol	These compounds are capable of engaging in intermolecular hydrogen bonding with protein molecules, disrupting intramolecular hydrogen bonding within the protein.
Salts of heavy metal ions, such as mercury, silver, and lead	These ions form strong bonds with the carboxylate anions of the acidic amino acids or SH groups of cysteine, disrupting ionic bonds and disulfide linkages.
Alkaloid reagents, such as tannic acid (used in tanning leather)	These reagents combine with positively charged amino groups in proteins to disrupt ionic bonds.

Anyone who has fried an egg has observed denaturation. The clear egg white turns opaque as the albumin denatures and coagulates. No one has yet reversed that process. However, given the proper circumstances and enough time, a protein that has unfolded under sufficiently gentle conditions can refold and may again exhibit biological activity (Figure 18.12.8). Such evidence suggests that, at least for these proteins, the primary structure determines the secondary and tertiary structure. A given sequence of amino acids seems to adopt its particular three-dimensional arrangement naturally if conditions are right.

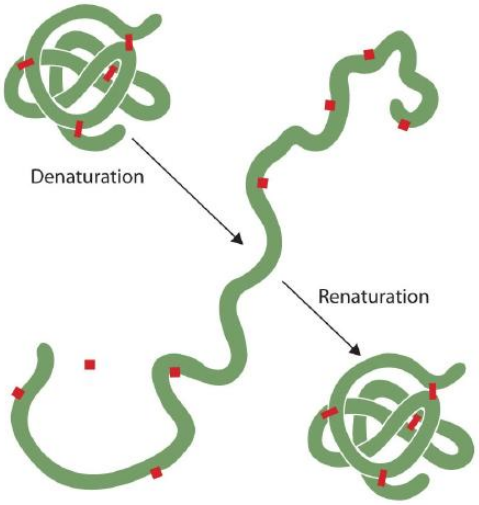


Figure 18.12.8: Denaturation and Renaturation of a Protein. The denaturation (unfolding) and renaturation (refolding) of a protein is depicted. The red boxes represent stabilizing interactions, such as disulfide linkages, hydrogen bonding, and/or ionic bonds.

The primary structures of proteins are quite sturdy. In general, fairly vigorous conditions are needed to hydrolyze peptide bonds. At the secondary through quaternary levels, however, proteins are quite vulnerable to attack, though they vary in their vulnerability to denaturation. The delicately folded globular proteins are much easier to denature than are the tough, fibrous proteins of hair and skin.

18.12: Chemical Properties of Proteins is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **18.4: Proteins** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

19: Enzymes and Vitamins

19.1: Catalysis by Enzymes
19.2: Enzyme Cofactors
19.3: Enzyme Classification
19.4: How Enzymes Work
19.5: Effect of Concentration on Enzyme Activity
19.6: Effect of Temperature and pH on Enzyme Activity
19.7: Enzyme Regulation - Feedback and Allosteric Control
19.8: Enzyme Regulation - Inhibition
19.9: Enzyme Regulation - Covalent Modification and Genetic Control
19.10: Vitamins and Minerals

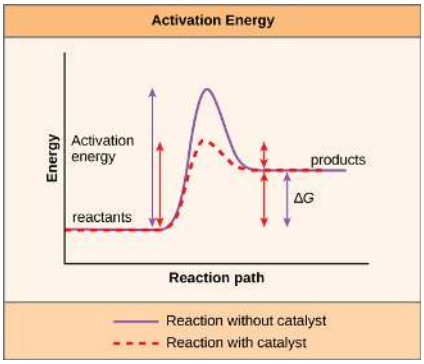
Thumbnail: Ball-and-stick model of the pyridoxal phosphate molecule, the active form of vitamin B_6. (Public Domain)

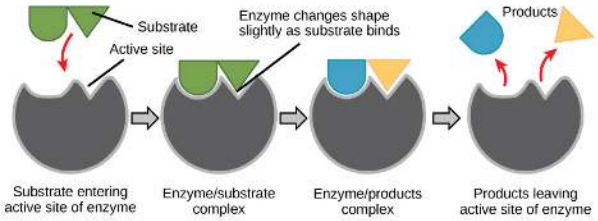
19: Enzymes and Vitamins is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

19.1: Catalysis by Enzymes

Learning Objectives

- Describe how enzymes catalyze biochemical reactions.





19.1: Catalysis by Enzymes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

19.2: Enzyme Cofactors

Learning Objectives

- To explain why vitamins are necessary in the diet.

Many enzymes are simple proteins consisting entirely of one or more amino acid chains. Other enzymes contain a nonprotein component called a **cofactor** that is necessary for the enzyme's proper functioning. There are two types of cofactors: inorganic ions [e.g., zinc or Cu(I) ions] and organic molecules known as coenzymes. Most **coenzymes** are vitamins or are derived from vitamins.

Vitamins are organic compounds that are essential in very small (trace) amounts for the maintenance of normal metabolism. They generally cannot be synthesized at adequate levels by the body and must be obtained from the diet. The absence or shortage of a vitamin may result in a vitamin-deficiency disease. In the first half of the 20th century, a major focus of biochemistry was the identification, isolation, and characterization of vitamins. Despite accumulating evidence that people needed more than just carbohydrates, fats, and proteins in their diets for normal growth and health, it was not until the early 1900s that research established the need for trace nutrients in the diet.

Table 19.2.1: Fat-Soluble Vitamins and Physiological Functions

Vitamin	Physiological Function	Effect of Deficiency
vitamin A (retinol)	formation of vision pigments; differentiation of epithelial cells	night blindness; continued deficiency leads to total blindness
vitamin D (cholecalciferol)	increases the body's ability to absorb calcium and phosphorus	osteomalacia (softening of the bones); known as rickets in children
vitamin E (tocopherol)	fat-soluble antioxidant	damage to cell membranes
vitamin K (phylloquinone)	formation of prothrombin, a key enzyme in the blood-clotting process	increases the time required for blood to clot

Because organisms differ in their synthetic abilities, a substance that is a vitamin for one species may not be so for another. Over the past 100 years, scientists have identified and isolated 13 vitamins required in the human diet and have divided them into two broad categories: the *fat-soluble vitamins*, which include vitamins A, D, E, and K, and the *water-soluble vitamins*, which are the B complex vitamins and vitamin C. All fat-soluble vitamins contain a high proportion of hydrocarbon structural components. There are one or two oxygen atoms present, but the compounds as a whole are nonpolar. In contrast, water-soluble vitamins contain large numbers of electronegative oxygen and nitrogen atoms, which can engage in hydrogen bonding with water. Most water-soluble vitamins act as coenzymes or are required for the synthesis of coenzymes. The fat-soluble vitamins are important for a variety of physiological functions. The key vitamins and their functions are found in Tables 19.2.1 and 19.2.2.

Table 19.2.2: Water-Soluble Vitamins and Physiological Functions

Vitamin	Coenzyme	Coenzyme Function	Deficiency Disease
vitamin B_1 (thiamine)	thiamine pyrophosphate	decarboxylation reactions	beri-beri
vitamin B_2 (riboflavin)	flavin mononucleotide or flavin adenine dinucleotide	oxidation-reduction reactions involving two hydrogen atoms	—
vitamin B_3 (niacin)	nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide or nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate	oxidation-reduction reactions involving the hydride ion (H^-)	pellagra
vitamin B_6 (pyridoxine)	pyridoxal phosphate	variety of reactions including the transfer of amino groups	—
vitamin B_{12} (cyanocobalamin)	methylcobalamin or deoxyadenoxylcobalamin	intramolecular rearrangement reactions	pernicious anemia

Vitamin	Coenzyme	Coenzyme Function	Deficiency Disease
biotin	biotin	carboxylation reactions	—
folic acid	tetrahydrofolate	carrier of one-carbon units such as the formyl group	anemia
pantothenic Acid	coenzyme A	carrier of acyl groups	—
vitamin C (ascorbic acid)	none	antioxidant; formation of collagen, a protein found in tendons, ligaments, and bone	scurvy

Vitamins C and E, as well as the provitamin β-carotene can act as antioxidants in the body. Antioxidants prevent damage from free radicals, which are molecules that are highly reactive because they have unpaired electrons. Free radicals are formed not only through metabolic reactions involving oxygen but also by such environmental factors as radiation and pollution.

> *β-carotene is known as a provitamin because it can be converted to vitamin A in the body.*

Free radicals react most commonly react with lipoproteins and unsaturated fatty acids in cell membranes, removing an electron from those molecules and thus generating a new free radical. The process becomes a chain reaction that finally leads to the oxidative degradation of the affected compounds. Antioxidants react with free radicals to stop these chain reactions by forming a more stable molecule or, in the case of vitamin E, a free radical that is much less reactive (vitamin E is converted back to its original form through interaction with vitamin C).

Summary

Vitamins are organic compounds that are essential in very small amounts for the maintenance of normal metabolism. Vitamins are divided into two broad categories: fat-soluble vitamins and water-soluble vitamins. Most water-soluble vitamins are needed for the formation of coenzymes, which are organic molecules needed by some enzymes for catalytic activity.

19.2: Enzyme Cofactors is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **18.9: Enzyme Cofactors and Vitamins** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

19.3: Enzyme Classification

Learning Objectives

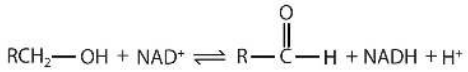
- Objective 1
- Objective 2

Hundreds of enzymes have been purified and studied in an effort to understand how they work so effectively and with such specificity. The resulting knowledge has been used to design drugs that inhibit or activate particular enzymes. An example is the intensive research to improve the treatment of or find a cure for acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). AIDS is caused by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Researchers are studying the enzymes produced by this virus and are developing drugs intended to block the action of those enzymes without interfering with enzymes produced by the human body. Several of these drugs have now been approved for use by AIDS patients.

Enzyme Nomenclature

Most enzymes can be recognized because they have the family name ending *–ase*. However, the first enzymes to be discovered were named according to their source or method of discovery. The enzyme *pepsin*, which aids in the hydrolysis of proteins, is found in the digestive juices of the stomach (Greek *pepsis*, meaning "digestion"). *Papain*, another enzyme that hydrolyzes protein (in fact, it is used in meat tenderizers), is isolated from papayas.

In addition to the family name, more systematic enzyme names will give two sepcific pieces of information: the first part is the *substrate* upon which the enzyme acts, and the second part is the *type of reaction* it catalyzes. For example, alcohol dehydrogenase (Figure 19.3.1) catalyzes the *oxidation* of an *alcohol* to an aldehyde.



Enzyme Classification

As more enzymes were discovered, chemists recognized the need for a more systematic and chemically informative identification scheme. In the current numbering and naming scheme, under the oversight of the Nomenclature Commission of the International Union of Biochemistry, enzymes are arranged into *six groups* according to the general type of reaction they catalyze (Table 19.3.1), with subgroups and secondary subgroups that specify the reaction more precisely.

Each enzyme is assigned a four-digit number, preceded by the prefix EC—for enzyme classification—that indicates its group, subgroup, and so forth. This is demonstrated in Table 19.3.2 for alcohol dehydrogenase.

Table 19.3.1: Classes of Enzymes

Main Class	Type of Reaction Catalyzed	Subclasses	Examples
Oxidoreductases	oxidation-reduction reactions	*Dehydrogenases* catalyze oxidation-reduction reactions involving hydrogen.	Alcohol dehydrogenase
		Oxidases catalyze oxidation by addition of O_2 to a substrate.	
		Reductases catalyze reactions in which a substrate is reduced.	
Transferases	transfer reactions of functional groups	*Transaminases* catalyze the transfer of amino group.	
		Kinases catalyze the transfer of a phosphate group.	Phosphofructokinase
Hydrolases	reactions that use water to break a chemical bond	*Lipases* catalyze the hydrolysis of lipids	

Main Class	Type of Reaction Catalyzed	Subclasses	Examples
		Proteases catalyze the hydrolysis of proteins	
		Amylases catalyze the hydrolysis of carbohydrates	
		Nucleases catalyze the hydrolysis of DNA and RNA	
Lyases	reactions in which functional groups are added or removed without hydrolysis	*Decarboxylases* catalyze the removal of carboxyl groups.	
		Deaminases catalyze the removal of amino groups.	
		Dehydratases catalyze the removal of water.	
		Hydratases catalyze the addition of water.	Fumarase
Isomerases	reactions in which a compound is converted to its isomer	*Isomerases* may catalyze the conversion of an aldose to a ketose.	Triose Phosphate Isomerase
		Mutases catalyze reactions in which a functional group is transferred from one atom in a substrate to another.	
Ligases	reactions in which new bonds are formed between carbon and another atom; energy is required	*Synthetases* catalyze reactions in which two smaller molecules are linked to form a larger one.	
		Carboxylases catalyze the addition of CO_2 using ATP	Pyruvate Carboxylase

Table 19.3.2: Assignment of an Enzyme Classification Number

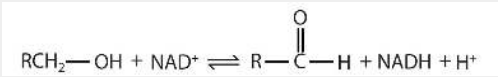
Alcohol Dehydrogenase: EC 1.1.1.1	
The first digit indicates that this enzyme is an oxidoreductase; that is, an enzyme that catalyzes an oxidation-reduction reaction. The second digit indicates that this oxidoreductase catalyzes a reaction involving a primary or secondary alcohol. The third digit indicates that either the coenzyme NAD^+ or $NADP^+$ is required for this reaction.	
The fourth digit indicates that this was the first enzyme isolated, characterized, and named using this system of nomenclature.	
The systematic name for this enzyme is *alcohol:NAD*$^+$ *oxidoreductase*, while the recommended or common name is alcohol dehydrogenase.	
Reaction catalyzed:	

Figure* 19.3.1*: *Structure of the alcohol dehydrogenase protein (E.C.1.1.1.1) (EE ISOZYME) complexed wtih nicotinamide adenini dinulceotide (NAD) and zinc (PDB: 1CDO).*

Summary

An enzyme is a biological catalyst, a substance that increases the rate of a chemical reaction without being changed or consumed in the reaction. A systematic process is used to name and classify enzymes.

19.3: Enzyme Classification is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **18.5: Enzymes** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

19.4: How Enzymes Work

Learning Objectives

- To describe the interaction between an enzyme and its substrate.

Enzyme-catalyzed reactions occur in at least two steps. In the first step, an enzyme (E) and the substrate molecule or molecules (S) collide and react to form an intermediate compound called the *enzyme-substrate* (ES) *complex*. (This step is reversible because the complex can break apart into the original substrate or substrates and the free enzyme.) Once the ES complex forms, the enzyme is able to catalyze the formation of product (P), which is then released from the enzyme surface:

$$E + S \leftrightarrow ES \tag{19.4.1}$$

$$ES \rightarrow E + P \tag{19.4.2}$$

Hydrogen bonding and other electrostatic interactions hold the enzyme and substrate together in the complex. The structural features or functional groups on the enzyme that participate in these interactions are located in a cleft or pocket on the enzyme surface. This pocket, where the enzyme combines with the substrate and transforms the substrate to product is called the active site of the enzyme (Figure 19.4.1).

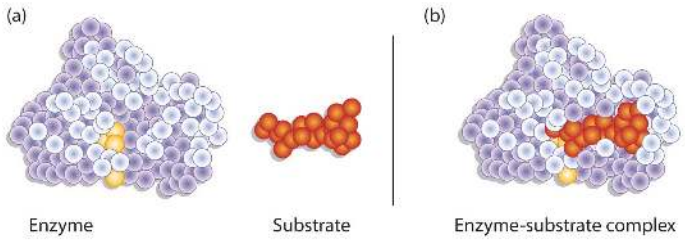


Figure 19.4.1: Substrate Binding to the Active Site of an Enzyme. The enzyme dihydrofolate reductase is shown with one of its substrates: $NADP^+$ (a) unbound and (b) bound. The $NADP^+$ (shown in red) binds to a pocket that is complementary to it in shape and ionic properties.

Models of Enzyme-Substrate Interaction

The active site of an enzyme possesses a unique conformation (including correctly positioned bonding groups) that is complementary to the structure of the substrate, so that the enzyme and substrate molecules fit together in much the same manner as a key fits into a tumbler lock. In fact, an early model describing the formation of the enzyme-substrate complex was called the **lock-and-key model** (Figure 19.4.2). This model portrayed the enzyme as conformationally rigid and able to bond only to substrates that exactly fit the active site.

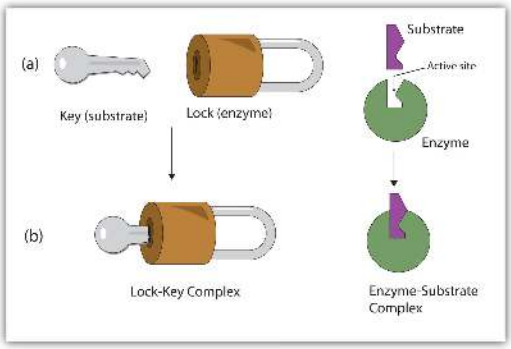


Figure 19.4.2: The Lock-and-Key Model of Enzyme Action. (a) Because the substrate and the active site of the enzyme have complementary structures and bonding groups, they fit together as a key fits a lock. (b) The catalytic reaction occurs while the two are bonded together in the enzyme-substrate complex.

Working out the precise three-dimensional structures of numerous enzymes has enabled chemists to refine the original lock-and-key model of enzyme actions. They discovered that the binding of a substrate often leads to a large conformational change in the enzyme, as well as to changes in the structure of the substrate or substrates. The current theory, known as the **induced-fit model**,

says that enzymes can undergo a change in conformation when they bind substrate molecules, and the active site has a shape complementary to that of the substrate only *after* the substrate is bound, as shown for hexokinase in Figure 19.4.3. After catalysis, the enzyme resumes its original structure.

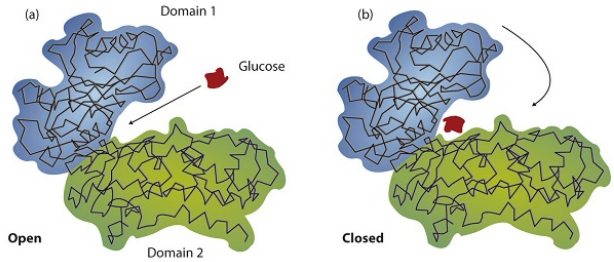


Figure 19.4.3: The Induced-Fit Model of Enzyme Action. (a) The enzyme hexokinase without its substrate (glucose, shown in red) is bound to the active site. (b) The enzyme conformation changes dramatically when the substrate binds to it, resulting in additional interactions between hexokinase and glucose.

The structural changes that occur when an enzyme and a substrate join together bring specific parts of a substrate into alignment with specific parts of the enzyme's active site. Amino acid side chains in or near the binding site can then act as acid or base catalysts, provide binding sites for the transfer of functional groups from one substrate to another or aid in the rearrangement of a substrate. The participating amino acids, which are usually widely separated in the primary sequence of the protein, are brought close together in the active site as a result of the folding and bending of the polypeptide chain or chains when the protein acquires its tertiary and quaternary structure. Binding to enzymes brings reactants close to each other and aligns them properly, which has the same effect as increasing the concentration of the reacting compounds.

Example 19.4.1

a. What type of interaction would occur between an OH group present on a substrate molecule and a functional group in the active site of an enzyme?
b. Suggest an amino acid whose side chain might be in the active site of an enzyme and form the type of interaction you just identified.

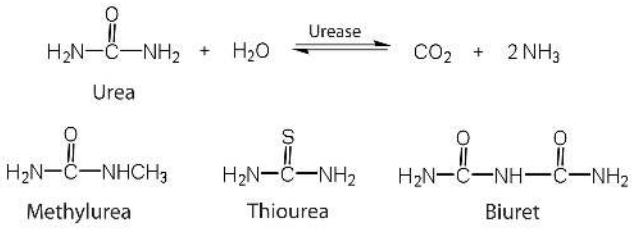
Solution

a. An OH group would most likely engage in hydrogen bonding with an appropriate functional group present in the active site of an enzyme.
b. Several amino acid side chains would be able to engage in hydrogen bonding with an OH group. One example would be asparagine, which has an amide functional group.

Exercise 19.4.1

a. What type of interaction would occur between an COO^- group present on a substrate molecule and a functional group in the active site of an enzyme?
b. Suggest an amino acid whose side chain might be in the active site of an enzyme and form the type of interaction you just identified.

One characteristic that distinguishes an enzyme from all other types of catalysts is its **substrate specificity**. An inorganic acid such as sulfuric acid can be used to increase the reaction rates of many different reactions, such as the hydrolysis of disaccharides, polysaccharides, lipids, and proteins, with complete impartiality. In contrast, enzymes are much more specific. Some enzymes act on a single substrate, while other enzymes act on any of a group of related molecules containing a similar functional group or chemical bond. Some enzymes even distinguish between D- and L-stereoisomers, binding one stereoisomer but not the other. Urease, for example, is an enzyme that catalyzes the hydrolysis of a single substrate—urea—but not the closely related compounds methyl urea, thiourea, or biuret. The enzyme carboxypeptidase, on the other hand, is far less specific. It catalyzes the removal of nearly any amino acid from the carboxyl end of any peptide or protein.



Enzyme specificity results from the uniqueness of the active site in each different enzyme because of the identity, charge, and spatial orientation of the functional groups located there. It regulates cell chemistry so that the proper reactions occur in the proper place at the proper time. Clearly, it is crucial to the proper functioning of the living cell.

Summary

A substrate binds to a specific region on an enzyme known as the active site, where the substrate can be converted to product. The substrate binds to the enzyme primarily through hydrogen bonding and other electrostatic interactions. The induced-fit model says that an enzyme can undergo a conformational change when binding a substrate. Enzymes exhibit varying degrees of substrate specificity.

19.4: How Enzymes Work is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **18.6: Enzyme Action** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

19.5: Effect of Concentration on Enzyme Activity

Learning Objectives

- To describe how pH, temperature, and the concentration of an enzyme and its substrate influence enzyme activity.

The single most important property of enzymes is the ability to increase the rates of reactions occurring in living organisms, a property known as *catalytic activity*. Because most enzymes are proteins, their activity is affected by factors that disrupt protein structure, as well as by factors that affect catalysts in general. Factors that disrupt protein structure include temperature and pH; factors that affect catalysts in general include reactant or substrate concentration and catalyst or enzyme concentration. The activity of an enzyme can be measured by monitoring either the rate at which a substrate disappears or the rate at which a product forms.

Substrate Concentration

In the presence of a given amount of enzyme, the rate of an enzymatic reaction increases as the substrate concentration increases until a limiting rate is reached, after which further increase in the substrate concentration produces no significant change in the reaction rate (part (a) of Figure 19.5.1). At this point, so much substrate is present that essentially all of the enzyme active sites have substrate bound to them. In other words, the enzyme molecules are saturated with substrate. The excess substrate molecules cannot react until the substrate already bound to the enzymes has reacted and been released (or been released without reacting).

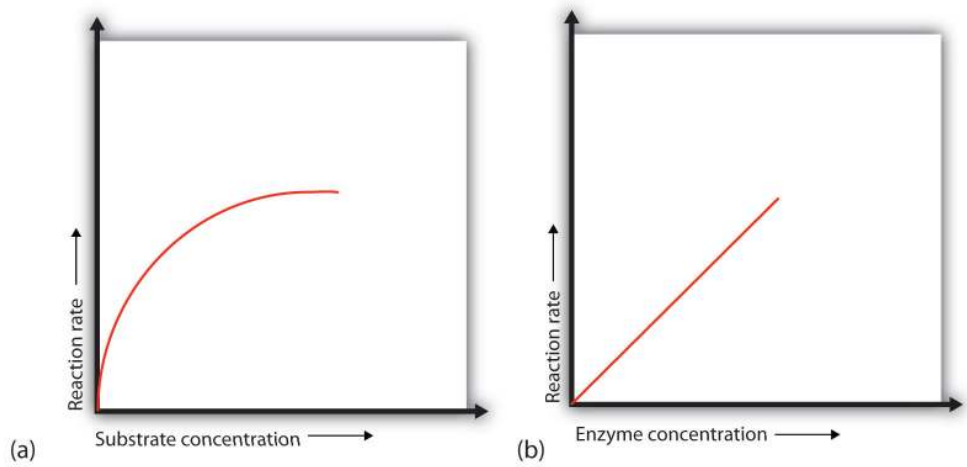


Figure 19.5.1: Concentration versus Reaction Rate. (a) This graph shows the effect of substrate concentration on the rate of a reaction that is catalyzed by a fixed amount of enzyme. (b) This graph shows the effect of enzyme concentration on the reaction rate at a constant level of substrate.

Let's consider an analogy. Ten taxis (enzyme molecules) are waiting at a taxi stand to take people (substrate) on a 10-minute trip to a concert hall, one passenger at a time. If only 5 people are present at the stand, the rate of their arrival at the concert hall is 5 people in 10 minutes. If the number of people at the stand is increased to 10, the rate increases to 10 arrivals in 10 minutes. With 20 people at the stand, the rate would still be 10 arrivals in 10 minutes. The taxis have been "saturated." If the taxis could carry 2 or 3 passengers each, the same principle would apply. The rate would simply be higher (20 or 30 people in 10 minutes) before it leveled off.

Enzyme Concentration

When the concentration of the enzyme is significantly lower than the concentration of the substrate (as when the number of taxis is far lower than the number of waiting passengers), the rate of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction is directly dependent on the enzyme concentration (part (b) of Figure 19.5.1). This is true for any catalyst; the reaction rate increases as the concentration of the catalyst is increased.

Effect of Temperature on Activity

A general rule of thumb for most chemical reactions is that a temperature rise of 10°C approximately doubles the reaction rate. To some extent, this rule holds for all enzymatic reactions. After a certain point, however, an increase in temperature causes a decrease

in the enzyme reaction rate, due to *denaturation* of the protein structure and disruption of the active site (part (a) of Figure 19.5.2). For many proteins, denaturation occurs between 45°C and 55°C. Furthermore, even though an enzyme may appear to have a maximum reaction rate between 40°C and 50°C, most biochemical reactions are carried out at lower temperatures because enzymes are not stable at these higher temperatures and will denature after a few minutes.

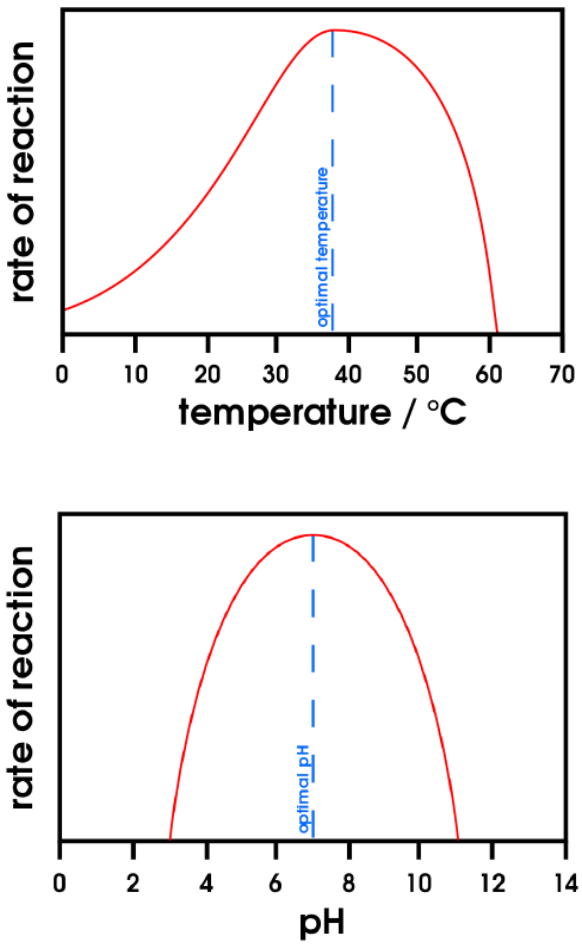


Figure 19.5.2: Temperature and pH versus Concentration. (a) This graph depicts the effect of temperature on the rate of a reaction that is catalyzed by a fixed amount of enzyme. (b) This graph depicts the effect of pH on the rate of a reaction that is catalyzed by a fixed amount of enzyme.

At 0°C and 100°C, the rate of enzyme-catalyzed reactions is nearly zero. This fact has several practical applications. We sterilize objects by placing them in boiling water, which denatures the enzymes of any bacteria that may be in or on them. We preserve our food by refrigerating or freezing it, which slows enzyme activity. When animals go into hibernation in winter, their body temperature drops, decreasing the rates of their metabolic processes to levels that can be maintained by the amount of energy stored in the fat reserves in the animals' tissues.

Effect of Hydrogen Ion Concentration (pH) on Activity

Because most enzymes are proteins, they are sensitive to changes in the hydrogen ion concentration or pH. Enzymes may be denatured by extreme levels of hydrogen ions (whether high or low); *any* change in pH, even a small one, alters the degree of ionization of an enzyme's acidic and basic side groups and the substrate components as well. Ionizable side groups located in the active site must have a certain charge for the enzyme to bind its substrate. Neutralization of even one of these charges alters an enzyme's catalytic activity.

An enzyme exhibits maximum activity over the narrow pH range in which a molecule exists in its properly charged form. The median value of this pH range is called the optimum pH of the enzyme (part (b) of Figure 19.5.2). With the notable exception of gastric juice (the fluids secreted in the stomach), most body fluids have pH values between 6 and 8. Not surprisingly, most enzymes

exhibit optimal activity in this pH range. However, a few enzymes have optimum pH values outside this range. For example, the optimum pH for pepsin, an enzyme that is active in the stomach, is 2.0.

Summary

Initially, an increase in substrate concentration leads to an increase in the rate of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction. As the enzyme molecules become saturated with substrate, this increase in reaction rate levels off. The rate of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction increases with an increase in the concentration of an enzyme. At low temperatures, an increase in temperature increases the rate of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction. At higher temperatures, the protein is denatured, and the rate of the reaction dramatically decreases. An enzyme has an optimum pH range in which it exhibits maximum activity.

Concept Review Exercises

1. The concentration of substrate X is low. What happens to the rate of the enzyme-catalyzed reaction if the concentration of X is doubled?
2. What effect does an increase in the enzyme concentration have on the rate of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction?

Answers

1. If the concentration of the substrate is low, increasing its concentration will increase the rate of the reaction.
2. An increase in the amount of enzyme will increase the rate of the reaction (provided sufficient substrate is present).

Exercises

1. In non-enzyme-catalyzed reactions, the reaction rate increases as the concentration of reactant is increased. In an enzyme-catalyzed reaction, the reaction rate initially increases as the substrate concentration is increased but then begins to level off, so that the increase in reaction rate becomes less and less as the substrate concentration increases. Explain this difference.
2. Why do enzymes become inactive at very high temperatures?
3. An enzyme has an optimum pH of 7.4. What is most likely to happen to the activity of the enzyme if the pH drops to 6.3? Explain.
4. An enzyme has an optimum pH of 7.2. What is most likely to happen to the activity of the enzyme if the pH increases to 8.5? Explain.

Answers

1. In an enzyme-catalyzed reaction, the substrate binds to the enzyme to form an enzyme-substrate complex. If more substrate is present than enzyme, all of the enzyme binding sites will have substrate bound, and further increases in substrate concentration cannot increase the rate.
3. The activity will decrease; a pH of 6.3 is more acidic than 7.4, and one or more key groups in the active site may bind a hydrogen ion, changing the charge on that group.

19.5: Effect of Concentration on Enzyme Activity is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **18.7: Enzyme Activity** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

19.6: Effect of Temperature and pH on Enzyme Activity

19.6: Effect of Temperature and pH on Enzyme Activity is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

19.7: Enzyme Regulation - Feedback and Allosteric Control

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

In the previous section you learned about the different types of enzyme inhibitors and how they can be used to *slow* or *stop* enzyme activity by binding to an enzyme or enzyme-substrate complex. All of these inhibitor types, except noncompetitive inhibitors, work by binding to enzyme active sites. Noncompetitive inhibitors, however, work by binding to an enzyme at a location other than the active site, an *allosteric site*. Inhibitors and other molecules, called activators, that bind to enzymes at allosteric sites are considered an important part of enzyme regulation called **allosteric control**. In this section, we will take a look at allosteric control and feedback control, two ways in which enzyme activity is regulated differently.

Allosteric Control

Allosteric enzymes have both a binding site, for substrate binding and catalysis, and an allosteric site, for regulation of enzyme activity. When a regulator molecule binds to the allosteric site of an enzyme, usually by noncovalent interactions, a conformational change occurs in the enzyme active site, which affects substrate binding and reaction rates. Allosteric regulation of enzyme activity can be either positive, increasing reaction rates, or negative, decreasing reaction rates.

When an enzyme binds a negative regulator (or inhibitor), it will undergo a change in the active site in a way that *prevents* substrate binding, thereby lowering the reaction rate. As illustrated in the left-hand panel in Figure 19.7.1, the active site changes (becomes smaller in this case) and the substrate can no longer bind. Positive regulators (activators) bind to allosteric sites and cause conformational changes that open up an active site to *promote* substrate binding, allowing catalysis or increasing the reaction rate. The right panel of Figure 19.7.1 shows an enzyme that will only bind substrate when the active site is formed after the allosteric activator binds.

Some enzymes will have more than one allosteric site that can interact with one another, which allows for highly-controlled or finely-tuned reaction rates.

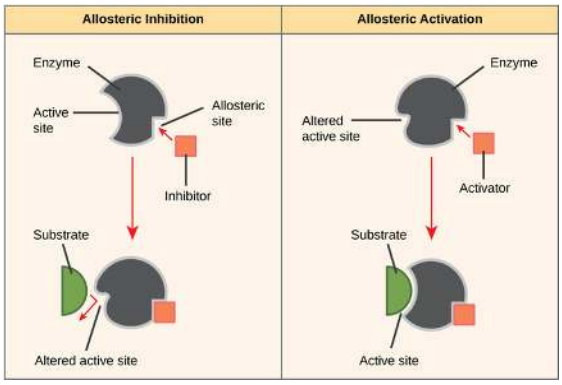


Figure 19.7.1: **Allosteric inhibitors and activators**: Allosteric inhibitors modify the active site of the enzyme so that substrate binding is reduced or prevented. In contrast, allosteric activators modify the active site of the enzyme so that the affinity for the substrate increases.

Feedback Control

Many biological processes involve the sequential action of multiple enzymes, a reaction pathway, in which the product of one reaction is the substrate for the next enzyme and so on until the final product is formed. Positive or negative regulation of these pathways often occurs by **feedback control**, where a product from one of the steps in the path *feedback* to an earlier step in the process to increase or decrease production. It may help to visualize a factory assembly line with each person responsible for one step (catalytic reaction) in making a perfect box of 12 donuts. If the last person in the line, who is responsible for putting 12 donuts in the box, falls behind, donuts will start to pile up. In order to not waste donuts or have less than full boxes at the end, it would be beneficial to signal to the other people to slow down or take a break. The process is similar in biochemical pathways: if too much product is being formed, the pathway needs to be turned off so energy and resources are not wasted.

Consider the pathway shown below in which substrate A is converted to product D through three enzymes and two intermediate products (B and C):

$$A \xrightarrow{Enzyme\,1} B \xrightarrow{Enzyme\,2} C \xrightarrow{Enzyme\,3} D$$

If there is a lot of product D formed, there would be enough to bind to Enzyme 1, which would inhibit formation of products B, and subsequently product C, and D. This type of *feedback control* is useful to prevent waste of substrate A and any energy that is needed for the activity of Enzymes 1-3. As you will see in later chapters, there are many different types of feedback control that can both negatively and positively regulate pathways. Typically, feedback control occurs at points in pathways where it would be energetically unfavorable to proceede if the final product is not needed.

Feedback inhibition is used to regulate the synthesis of many amino acids. For example, bacteria synthesize isoleucine from threonine in a series of five enzyme-catalyzed steps. As the concentration of isoleucine increases, some of it binds as a noncompetitive inhibitor to the first enzyme of the series (threonine deaminase), thus bringing about a decrease in the amount of isoleucine being formed (Figure 19.7.2).

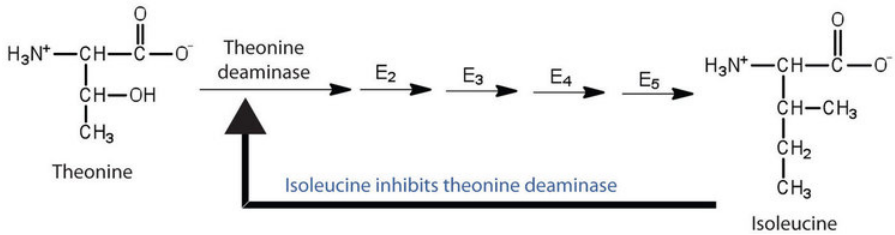


Figure 19.7.2: Feedback Inhibition of Threonine Deaminase by Isoleucine. Threonine deaminase is the first enzyme in the conversion of threonine to isoleucine. Isoleucine inhibits threonine deaminase through feedback inhibition.

19.7: Enzyme Regulation - Feedback and Allosteric Control is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **18.8: Enzyme Inhibition** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

19.8: Enzyme Regulation - Inhibition

Learning Objectives

- Explain what an enzyme inhibitor is.
- Distinguish between reversible and irreversible inhibitors.
- Distinguish between competitive, noncompetitive, and uncompetitive inhibitors.

Previously, we noted that enzymes can be inactivated at high temperatures and by changes in pH. These are *nonspecific* factors that would inactivate any enzyme. The activity of enzymes can also be regulated by more *specific* **inhibitors** that slow or stop catalysis. Enzyme inhibition can either be *reversible* or *irreversible*. In reversible inhibition, the inhibitor can bind (usually non-covalently) and dissociate, allowing enzyme activity to return back to its original, uninhibited level. Irreversible inhibitors bind to the enzyme permanently and thus permanently inhibit enzyme activity.

Reversible Inhibition

Reversible enzyme inhibition can be *competitive*, *noncompetitive*, or *uncompetitive*, depending on where the inhibitor binds to the enzyme, substrate, or enzyme-substrate complex.

Competitive inhibition is when an inhibitor reversibly binds to an enzyme at the enzyme active site; competing with the substrate for binding. A competitive inhibitor must be a molecule that is *structurally similar* to the substrate molecule, allowing it to interact with the enzyme active site through similar non-covalent interactions, but it does not, or cannot, undergo the same chemical reaction. When the inhibitor is bound to the active site, it blocks the correct substrate from binding and catalysis from occurring. However, as a reversible inhibitor, it can disassociate from the enzyme eventually allowing for the correct substrate to bind and the catalysis to occur. Because the inhibitor and substrate are in competition for the same active site, inhibition is concentration-dependent. As shown in the below plot of rate of reaction vs. substrate concentration (Figure 19.8.1), the competitive inhibitor slows the rate of reaction, but at higher substrate concentrations, the normal maximum rate can be reached.

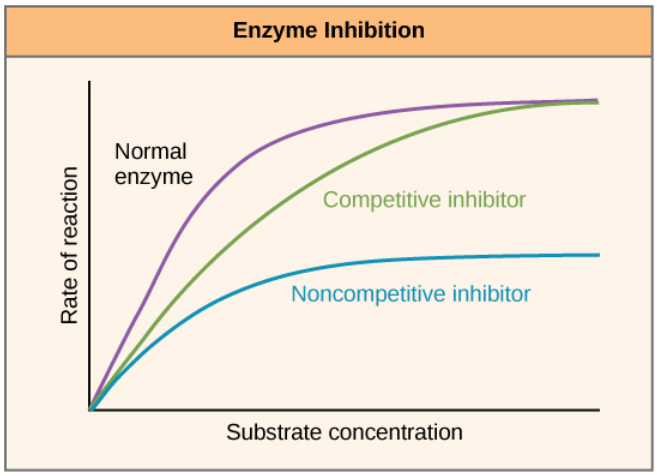


Figure 19.8.1: Plots of reaction rate vs. substrate concentration with and without inhibitors. Competitive inhibitors bind reversibly at the active site and therefore, compete with the substrate for binding. As substrate concentration increases, it can outcompete the inhibitor allowing enzyme activity to reach a normal maximum (green line). A noncompetive inhibitor binds at a site separate from the active site, the enzyme activity can only reach a lower than normal maximum reaction rate even as substrate concentration increases (blue line). Uncompetitive inhibition is not represented on this plot, but would be similar to the noncompetitive inhibitor, reaching a lower maximum rate. (Figure from OpenStax Biology)

Studies of competitive inhibition have provided helpful information about certain enzyme-substrate complexes and the interactions of specific groups at the active sites. As a result, pharmaceutical companies have synthesized drugs that competitively inhibit metabolic processes in bacteria and certain cancer cells. Many drugs are competitive inhibitors of specific enzymes.

A classic example of competitive inhibition is the effect of malonate on the enzyme activity of succinate dehydrogenase (Figure 19.8.2). Malonate and succinate are the anions of dicarboxylic acids and contain three and four carbon atoms, respectively. The malonate molecule binds to the active site because the spacing of its carboxyl groups is not greatly different from that of succinate.

However, no catalytic reaction occurs because malonate does not have a CH_2CH_2 group to convert to CH=CH. This reaction will also be discussed in connection with the Krebs cycle and energy production in a later chapter.

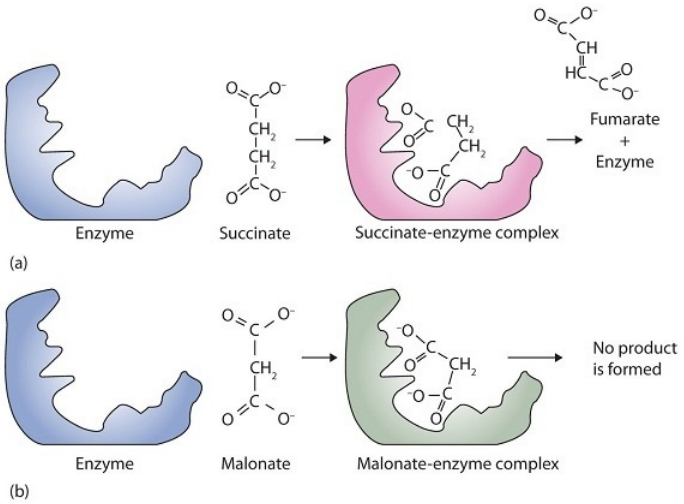


Figure 19.8.2: Competitive Inhibition. (a) Succinate binds to the enzyme succinate dehydrogenase. A dehydrogenation reaction occurs, and the product—fumarate—is released from the enzyme. (b) Malonate, a competitive inhibitor, also binds to the active site of succinate dehydrogenase. In this case, however, no subsequent reaction occurs while malonate remains bound to the enzyme.

In **uncompetitive inhibition**, the inhibitor can only bind the enzyme when the substrate is already bound, in other words it binds the enzyme-substrate complex but not the enzyme alone. The maximum reaction rate in the presence of an uncompetitive inhibitor is lowered, however, unlike with competitive inhibition, the rate cannot be increased by adding more substrate. This type of inhibition is most commonly seen when the enzyme reaction involves two substrates and as long as the concentration of inhibitor remains constant, the maximum reaction rate does not change.

A **noncompetitive inhibitor** can bind to either the free enzyme or the enzyme-substrate complex because its binding site on the enzyme is distinct from the active site. Binding of this kind of inhibitor alters the three-dimensional conformation of the enzyme, changing the configuration of the active site with one of two results. Either the enzyme-substrate complex does not form at its normal rate, or, once formed, it does not yield products at the normal rate (see Figure 19.8.1). Because the inhibitor does not structurally resemble the substrate, nor is it competing with the substrate for the active site, the addition of excess substrate does *not* reverse the inhibitory effect.

Chemotherapy is the strategic use of chemicals (that is, drugs) to destroy infectious microorganisms or cancer cells without causing excessive damage to the other, healthy cells of the host. From bacteria to humans, the metabolic pathways of all living organisms are quite similar, so the search for safe and effective chemotherapeutic agents is a formidable task. Many well-established chemotherapeutic drugs function by inhibiting a critical enzyme in the cells of the invading organism.

An *antibiotic* is a compound that kills bacteria; it may come from a natural source such as molds or be synthesized with a structure analogous to a naturally occurring antibacterial compound. Antibiotics constitute no well-defined class of chemically related substances, but many of them work by effectively inhibiting a variety of enzymes essential to bacterial growth.

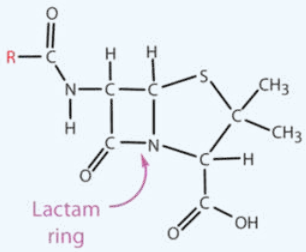
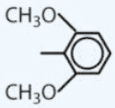
To Your Health: Penicillin

Penicillin, one of the most widely used antibiotics in the world, was fortuitously discovered by Alexander Fleming in 1928, when he noticed antibacterial properties in a mold growing on a bacterial culture plate. In 1938, Ernst Chain and Howard Florey began an intensive effort to isolate penicillin from the mold and study its properties. The large quantities of penicillin needed for this research became available through development of a corn-based nutrient medium that the mold loved and through the discovery of a higher-yielding strain of mold at a United States Department of Agriculture research center near Peoria, Illinois. Even so, it was not until 1944 that large quantities of penicillin were being produced and made available for the treatment of bacterial infections.

Penicillin functions by interfering with the synthesis of cell walls of reproducing bacteria. It does so by inhibiting an enzyme—transpeptidase—that catalyzes the last step in bacterial cell-wall biosynthesis. The defective walls cause bacterial cells to burst. Human cells are not affected because they have cell membranes, not cell walls.

Several naturally occurring penicillins have been isolated. They are distinguished by different R groups connected to a common structure: a four-member cyclic amide (called a lactam ring) fused to a five-member ring. The addition of appropriate organic compounds to the culture medium leads to the production of the different kinds of penicillin.

The penicillins are effective against gram-positive bacteria (bacteria capable of being stained by Gram's stain) and a few gram-negative bacteria (including the intestinal bacterium *Escherichia coli*). They are effective in the treatment of diphtheria, gonorrhea, pneumonia, syphilis, many pus infections, and certain types of boils. Penicillin G was the earliest penicillin to be used on a wide scale. However, it cannot be administered orally because it is quite unstable; the acidic pH of the stomach converts it to an inactive derivative. The major oral penicillins—penicillin V, ampicillin, and amoxicillin—on the other hand, are acid stable.

Penicillin Structure	R Group	Drug Name
	$-CH_2-$	penicillin G
	CH_2-O-	penicillin V
	$-CH(NH_2)-$	ampicillin
	$-CH(NH_2)-$	amoxicillin
		methicillin

Some strains of bacteria become resistant to penicillin through a mutation that allows them to synthesize an enzyme—penicillinase—that breaks the antibiotic down (by cleavage of the amide linkage in the lactam ring). To combat these strains, scientists have synthesized penicillin analogs (such as methicillin) that are not inactivated by penicillinase.

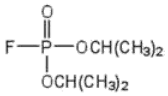
Some people (perhaps 5% of the population) are allergic to penicillin and therefore must be treated with other antibiotics. Their allergic reaction can be so severe that a fatal coma may occur if penicillin is inadvertently administered to them. Fortunately, several other antibiotics have been discovered. Most, including aureomycin and streptomycin, are the products of microbial synthesis. Others, such as the semisynthetic penicillins and tetracyclines, are made by chemical modifications of antibiotics; and some, like chloramphenicol, are manufactured entirely by chemical synthesis. They are as effective as penicillin in destroying infectious microorganisms. Many of these antibiotics exert their effects by blocking protein synthesis in microorganisms.

Initially, antibiotics were considered miracle drugs, substantially reducing the number of deaths from blood poisoning, pneumonia, and other infectious diseases. Some seven decades ago, a person with a major infection almost always died. Today, such deaths are rare. Seven decades ago, pneumonia was a dreaded killer of people of all ages. Today, it kills only the very old or those ill from other causes. Antibiotics have indeed worked miracles in our time, but even miracle drugs have limitations. Not long after the drugs were first used, disease organisms began to develop strains resistant to them. In a race to stay ahead of resistant bacterial strains, scientists continue to seek new antibiotics. The penicillins have now been partially displaced by related compounds, such as the cephalosporins and vancomycin. Unfortunately, some strains of bacteria have already shown resistance to these antibiotics.

Irreversible Inhibition

An **irreversible inhibitor** inactivates an enzyme by bonding covalently to a particular group at the active site. When the inhibitor is bound, the enzyme active site is blocked, the substrate does not bind, and catalysis cannot occur, similar to competitive inhibition. The difference here is that the inhibition is *irreversible*, meaning that the inhibitor remains bound and does not dissociate from the enzyme because the enzyme-inhibitor covalent bonds are not easily broken. In the presence of an irreversible inhibitor, the substrate cannot bind the active site at all, nor can high substrate concentrations outcompete the inhibitor, hence the enzyme is completely inactivated. Many of the known irreversible inhibitors are *poisons* because they inactivate an enzyme completely. Some examples are provided in Table 19.8.1 below.

Table 19.8.1: Poisons as Enzyme Inhibitors

Poison	Formula	Example of Enzyme Inhibited	Action
arsenate	AsO_4^{3-}	glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase	substitutes for phosphate
iodoacetate	ICH_2COO^-	triose phosphate dehydrogenase	binds to cysteine SH group
diisopropylfluoro-phosphate (DIFP; a nerve poison)		acetylcholinesterase	binds to serine OH group

Summary

An irreversible inhibitor inactivates an enzyme by bonding covalently to a particular group at the active site. A reversible inhibitor inactivates an enzyme through noncovalent, reversible interactions. A competitive inhibitor competes with the substrate for binding at the active site of the enzyme. A noncompetitive inhibitor binds at a site distinct from the active site.

Concept Review Exercises

1. What are the characteristics of an irreversible inhibitor?
2. In what ways does a competitive inhibitor differ from a noncompetitive inhibitor?

Answers

1. It inactivates an enzyme by bonding covalently to a particular group at the active site.
2. A competitive inhibitor structurally resembles the substrate for a given enzyme and competes with the substrate for binding at the active site of the enzyme. A noncompetitive inhibitor binds at a site distinct from the active site and can bind to either the free enzyme or the enzyme-substrate complex.

Exercises

1. What amino acid is present in the active site of all enzymes that are irreversibly inhibited by nerve gases such as DIFP?
2. Oxaloacetate (OOCCH2COCOO) inhibits succinate dehydrogenase. Would you expect oxaloacetate to be a competitive or noncompetitive inhibitor? Explain.

Answer

1. serine

19.8: Enzyme Regulation - Inhibition is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **18.8: Enzyme Inhibition** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

19.9: Enzyme Regulation - Covalent Modification and Genetic Control

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

19.9: Enzyme Regulation - Covalent Modification and Genetic Control is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

19.10: Vitamins and Minerals

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

19.10: Vitamins and Minerals is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

20: The Generation of Biochemical Energy

20.1: Energy and Life
20.2: Energy and Biochemical Reactions
20.3: Cells and Their Structure
20.4: An Overview of Metabolism and Energy Production
20.5: Strategies of Metabolism - ATP and Energy Transfer
20.6: Strategies of Metabolism - Metabolic Pathways and Coupled Reactions
20.7: Strategies of Metabolism- Oxidized and Reduced Coenzymes
20.8: The Citric Acid Cycle
20.9: The Electron-Transport Chain and ATP Production
20.10: Harmful Oxygen By-Products and Antioxidant Vitamins

Thumbnail: Ball-and-stick model of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) based on x-ray diffraction data. (Public Domain; Ben Mills).

20: The Generation of Biochemical Energy is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

20.1: Energy and Life

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

Life requires energy. Animals, for example, require heat energy to maintain body temperature, mechanical energy to move their limbs, and chemical energy to synthesize the compounds needed by their cells. Living cells remain organized and functioning properly only through a continual supply of energy. But only specific forms of energy can be used. Supplying a plant with energy by holding it in a flame will not prolong its life. On the other hand, a green plant is able to absorb radiant energy from the sun, the most abundant source of energy for life on the earth. Plants use this energy first to form glucose and then to make other carbohydrates, as well as lipids and proteins. Unlike plants, animals cannot directly use the sun's energy to synthesize new compounds. They must eat plants or other animals to get carbohydrates, fats, and proteins and the chemical energy stored in them. Once digested and transported to the cells, the nutrient molecules can be used in either of two ways: as building blocks for making new cell parts or repairing old ones or "burned" for energy.

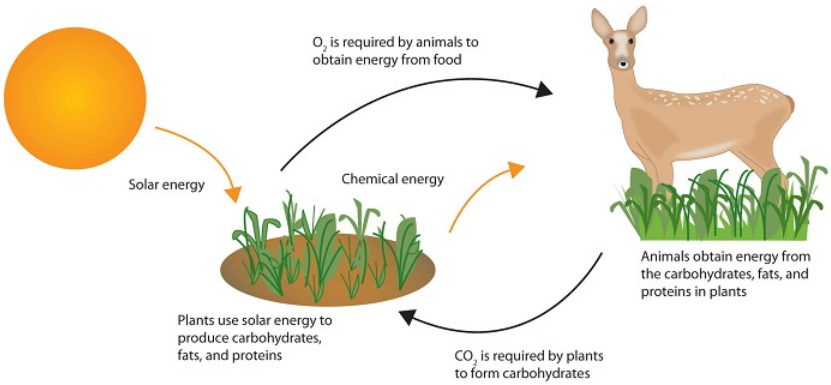


Figure 20.1.2: Some Energy Transformations in Living Systems. Plants and animals exist in a cycle; each requires products of the other.

The thousands of coordinated chemical reactions that keep cells alive are referred to collectively as **metabolism**. In general, metabolic reactions are divided into two classes: the breaking down of molecules to obtain energy is **catabolism**, and the building of new molecules needed by living systems is **anabolism**.

Definition: Metabolite

Any chemical compound that participates in a metabolic reaction is a *metabolite*.

Most of the energy required by animals is generated from lipids and carbohydrates. These fuels must be oxidized, or "burned," for the energy to be released. The oxidation process ultimately converts the lipid or carbohydrate to carbon dioxide (CO_2) and water (H_2O).

Carbohydrate:

$$\mathrm{C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\,O_2 \rightarrow 6\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O + 670\,kcal}$$

Lipid:

$$\mathrm{C_{16}H_{32}O_2 + 23\,O_2 \rightarrow 16\,CO_2 + 16\,H_2O + 2\,,385\,kcal}$$

These two equations summarize the biological combustion of a carbohydrate and a lipid by the cell through respiration. **Respiration** is the collective name for all metabolic processes in which gaseous oxygen is used to oxidize organic matter to carbon dioxide, water, and energy.

Like the combustion of the common fuels we burn in our homes and cars (wood, coal, gasoline), respiration uses oxygen from the air to break down complex organic substances to carbon dioxide and water. But the energy released in the burning of wood is manifested entirely in the form of heat, and excess heat energy is not only useless but also injurious to the living cell. Living organisms instead conserve much of the energy respiration releases by channeling it into a series of stepwise reactions that produce adenosine triphosphate (ATP) or other compounds that ultimately lead to the synthesis of ATP. The remainder of the energy is released as heat and manifested as body temperature.

20.1: Energy and Life is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **20.0: Prelude to Energy Metabolism** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

20.2: Energy and Biochemical Reactions

20.2: Energy and Biochemical Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

20.3: Cells and Their Structure

Learning Objectives

- Describe the two types of cell: prokaryotic and eukaryotic.
- Explain the function of each cellular component.

Cells fall into one of two broad categories: prokaryotic and eukaryotic. Only the predominantly single-celled organisms of the domains Bacteria and Archaea are classified as prokaryotes (pro- = “before”; -kary- = “nucleus”). Cells of animals, plants, fungi, and protists are all eukaryotes (eu- = “true”) and are made up of eukaryotic cells.

Components of Prokaryotic Cells

All cells share four common components: 1) a plasma membrane, an outer covering that separates the cell’s interior from its surrounding environment; 2) cytoplasm, consisting of a jelly-like cytosol within the cell in which other cellular components are found; 3) DNA, the genetic material of the cell; and 4) ribosomes, which synthesize proteins. However, prokaryotes differ from eukaryotic cells in several ways.

A prokaryote is a simple, mostly single-celled (unicellular) organism that lacks a nucleus, or any other membrane-bound organelle. We will shortly come to see that this is significantly different in eukaryotes. Prokaryotic DNA is found in a central part of the cell: the nucleoid (Figure 20.3.1).

Figure 20.3.1: This figure shows the generalized structure of a prokaryotic cell. All prokaryotes have chromosomal DNA localized in a nucleoid, ribosomes, a cell membrane, and a cell wall. The other structures shown are present in some, but not all, bacteria.

Unlike prokaryotic cells, eukaryotic cells have: 1) a membrane-bound nucleus; 2) numerous membrane-bound organelles such as the endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi apparatus, chloroplasts, mitochondria, and others; and 3) several, rod-shaped chromosomes. Because a eukaryotic cell’s nucleus is surrounded by a membrane, it is often said to have a “true nucleus.” The word “organelle” means “little organ,” and, as already mentioned, organelles have specialized cellular functions, just as the organs of your body have specialized functions.

At this point, it should be clear to you that eukaryotic cells have a more complex structure than prokaryotic cells. Organelles allow different functions to be compartmentalized in different areas of the cell. Before turning to organelles, let’s first examine two important components of the cell: the plasma membrane and the **cytoplasm**.

Figure 20.3.2: These figures show the major organelles and other cell components of a general eukaryotic cell.

Mitochondria (singular = mitochondrion) are often called the “powerhouses” or “energy factories” of a cell because they are responsible for making **adenosine triphosphate (ATP)**, the cell’s main energy-carrying molecule. ATP represents the short-term stored energy of the cell. Cellular respiration is the process of making ATP using the chemical energy found in glucose and other nutrients. In mitochondria, this process uses oxygen and produces carbon dioxide as a waste product. In fact, the carbon dioxide that you exhale with every breath comes from the cellular reactions that produce carbon dioxide as a byproduct.

Mitochondria are oval-shaped, double membrane organelles (Figure 20.3.3) that have their own ribosomes and DNA. Each membrane is a phospholipid bilayer embedded with proteins. The inner layer has folds called cristae. The area surrounded by the folds is called the **mitochondrial matrix**. The cristae and the matrix have different roles in cellular respiration.

Figure 20.3.3: This electron micrograph shows a mitochondrion as viewed with a transmission electron microscope. This organelle has an outer membrane and an inner membrane. The inner membrane contains folds, called cristae, which increase its surface area. The space between the two membranes is called the intermembrane space, and the space inside the inner membrane is called the mitochondrial matrix. ATP synthesis takes place on the inner membrane. (credit: modification of work by Matthew Britton; scale-bar data from Matt Russell)

20.3: Cells and Their Structure is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.2: Prokaryotic Cells** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0.

20.4: An Overview of Metabolism and Energy Production

Learning Objectives

- Describe the stages of catabolism from food to ATP.

Metabolism describes all of the chemical reactions that take place in an organism. A *metabolic pathway* is a series of interconnected biochemical reactions that convert a substrate molecule or molecules, step-by-step, through a series of metabolic intermediates, eventually yielding a final product or products. In the case of sugar metabolism, the first metabolic pathway synthesized sugar from smaller molecules, and the other pathway broke sugar down into smaller molecules. These two opposite processes—the first requiring energy and the second producing energy—are referred to as anabolic (building) and catabolic (breaking down) pathways, respectively. Consequently, metabolism is composed of building (**anabolism**) and degradation (**catabolism**).

It is important to know that the chemical reactions of metabolic pathways don't take place spontaneously. Each reaction step is facilitated, or catalyzed, by enzymes. Enzymes are important for catalyzing all types of biological reactions—those that require energy as well as those that release energy. See a simple graphic below, (Figure 20.4.1).

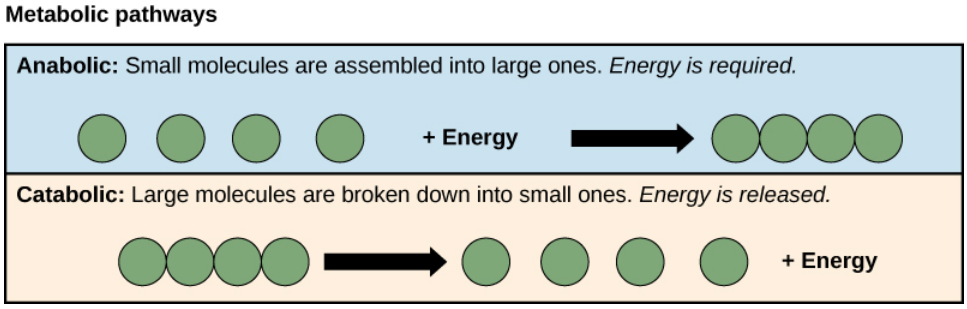


Figure 20.4.1: Anabolic pathways are those that require energy to synthesize larger molecules. Catabolic pathways are those that generate energy by breaking down larger molecules. Both types of pathways are required for maintaining the cell's energy balance.

We can think of catabolism as occurring in three stages (Figure 20.4.1). In stage I, carbohydrates, fats, and proteins are broken down into their individual monomer units: carbohydrates into simple sugars, fats into fatty acids and glycerol, and proteins into amino acids. One part of stage I of catabolism is the breakdown of food molecules by hydrolysis reactions into the individual monomer units—which occurs in the mouth, stomach, and small intestine—and is referred to as **digestion**.

In stage II, these monomer units (or building blocks) are further broken down through different reaction pathways, one of which produces ATP, to form a common end product, **Acetyl-coenzyme A**, that can then be used in stage III to produce even more ATP. In this chapter, we will look at each stage of catabolism—as an overview and in detail.

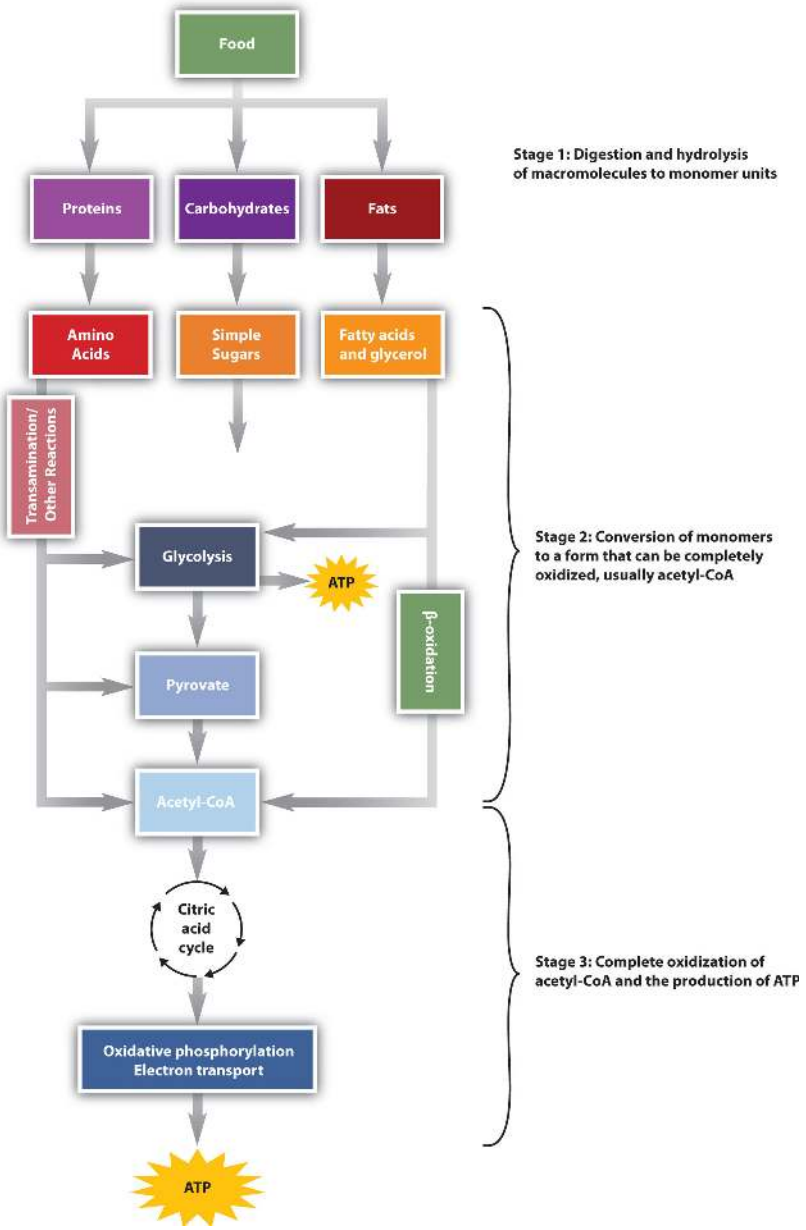


Figure 20.4.1: Energy Conversions. The conversion of food into cellular energy (as ATP) occurs in three stages.

20.4: An Overview of Metabolism and Energy Production is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

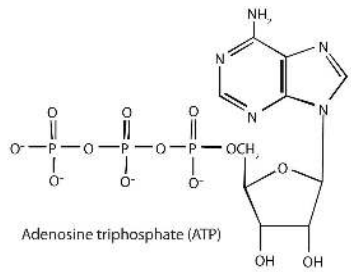
- **20.2: Stage I of Catabolism** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

20.5: Strategies of Metabolism - ATP and Energy Transfer

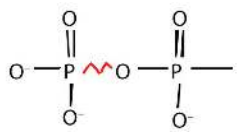
Learning Objectives

- To describe the importance of ATP as a source of energy in living organisms.

Adenosine triphosphate (ATP), a nucleotide composed of adenine, ribose, and three phosphate groups, is perhaps the most important of the so-called energy-rich compounds in a cell. Its concentration in the cell varies from 0.5 to 2.5 mg/mL of cell fluid.



Energy-rich compounds are substances having particular structural features that lead to a release of energy after hydrolysis. As a result, these compounds are able to supply energy for biochemical processes that require energy. The structural feature important in ATP is the phosphoric acid anhydride, or pyrophosphate, linkage:



The pyrophosphate bond, symbolized by a squiggle (~), is hydrolyzed when ATP is converted to adenosine diphosphate (ADP). In this hydrolysis reaction, the products contain less energy than the reactants; there is a release of energy (> 7 kcal/mol). One reason for the amount of energy released is that hydrolysis relieves the electron-electron repulsions experienced by the negatively charged phosphate groups when they are bonded to each other (Figure 20.1.1).

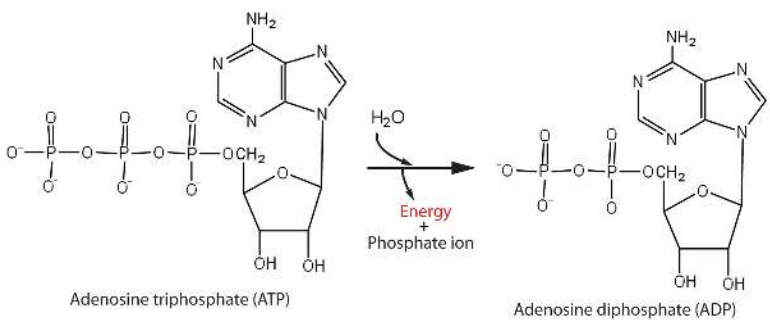


Figure 20.5.1: Hydrolysis of ATP to Form ADP

Energy is released because the products (ADP and phosphate ion) have less energy than the reactants [ATP and water (H_2O)].

The general equation for ATP hydrolysis is as follows:

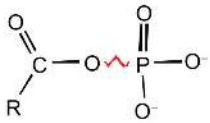
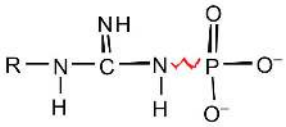
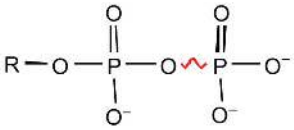
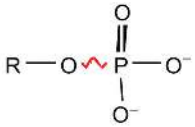
$$ATP + H_2O \rightarrow ADP + P_i + 7.4\ kcal/mol$$

If the hydrolysis of ATP releases energy, its synthesis (from ADP) requires energy. In the cell, ATP is produced by those processes that supply energy to the organism (absorption of radiant energy from the sun in green plants and breakdown of food in animals), and it is hydrolyzed by those processes that require energy (the syntheses of carbohydrates, lipids, proteins; the transmission of nerve impulses; muscle contractions). In fact, ATP is the principal medium of energy exchange in biological systems. Many scientists call it the energy currency of cells.

> *P_i is the symbol for the inorganic phosphate anions $H_2PO_4^-$ and HPO_4^{2-}.*

ATP is not the only high-energy compound needed for metabolism. Several others are listed in Table 20.5.1. Notice, however, that the energy released when ATP is hydrolyzed is approximately midway between those of the high-energy and the low-energy phosphate compounds. This means that the hydrolysis of ATP can provide energy for the phosphorylation of the compounds below it in the table. For example, the hydrolysis of ATP provides sufficient energy for the phosphorylation of glucose to form glucose 1-phosphate. By the same token, the hydrolysis of compounds, such as creatine phosphate, that appear *above* ATP in the table can provide the energy needed to resynthesize ATP from ADP.

Table 20.5.1: Energy Released by Hydrolysis of Some Phosphate Compounds

Type	Example	Energy Released (kcal/mol)
acyl phosphate 	1,3-bisphosphoglycerate (BPG)	−11.8
	acetyl phosphate	−11.3
guanidine phosphates 	creatine phosphate	−10.3
	arginine phosphate	−9.1
pyrophosphates 	$PP_{i*} \rightarrow 2P_i$	−7.8
	$ATP \rightarrow AMP + PP_i$	−7.7
	$ATP \rightarrow ADP + P_i$	−7.5
	$ADP \rightarrow AMP + P_i$	−7.5
sugar phosphates 	glucose 1-phosphate	−5.0
	fructose 6-phosphate	−3.8
	$AMP \rightarrow adenosine + P_i$	−3.4
	glucose 6-phosphate	−3.3
	glycerol 3-phosphate	−2.2
*PP_i is the pyrophosphate ion.		

Summary

The hydrolysis of ATP releases energy that can be used for cellular processes that require energy.

20.5: Strategies of Metabolism - ATP and Energy Transfer is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **20.1: ATP- the Universal Energy Currency** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

20.6: Strategies of Metabolism - Metabolic Pathways and Coupled Reactions

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

20.6: Strategies of Metabolism - Metabolic Pathways and Coupled Reactions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

20.7: Strategies of Metabolism- Oxidized and Reduced Coenzymes

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

20.7: Strategies of Metabolism- Oxidized and Reduced Coenzymes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

20.8: The Citric Acid Cycle

Learning Objectives

- Describe the reactions of the citric acid cycle.
- Describe the function of the citric acid cycle and identify the products produced.

The acetyl group enters a cyclic sequence of reactions known collectively as the citric acid cycle (or Krebs cycle or tricarboxylic acid [TCA] cycle). The cyclical design of this complex series of reactions, which bring about the oxidation of the acetyl group of acetyl-CoA to carbon dioxide and water, was first proposed by Hans Krebs in 1937. (He was awarded the 1953 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine.) Acetyl-CoA's entrance into the citric acid cycle is the beginning of stage III of catabolism. The citric acid cycle produces adenosine triphosphate (ATP), reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NADH), reduced flavin adenine dinucleotide ($FADH_2$), and metabolic intermediates for the synthesis of needed compounds.

Steps of the Citric Acid Cycle

At first glance, the citric acid cycle appears rather complex (Figure 20.8.1). All the reactions, however, are familiar types in organic chemistry: hydration, oxidation, decarboxylation, and hydrolysis. Each reaction of the citric acid cycle is numbered, and in Figure 20.8.1, the two acetyl carbon atoms are highlighted in red. Each intermediate in the cycle is a carboxylic acid, existing as an anion at physiological pH. All the reactions occur within the mitochondria, which are small organelles within the cells of plants and animals.

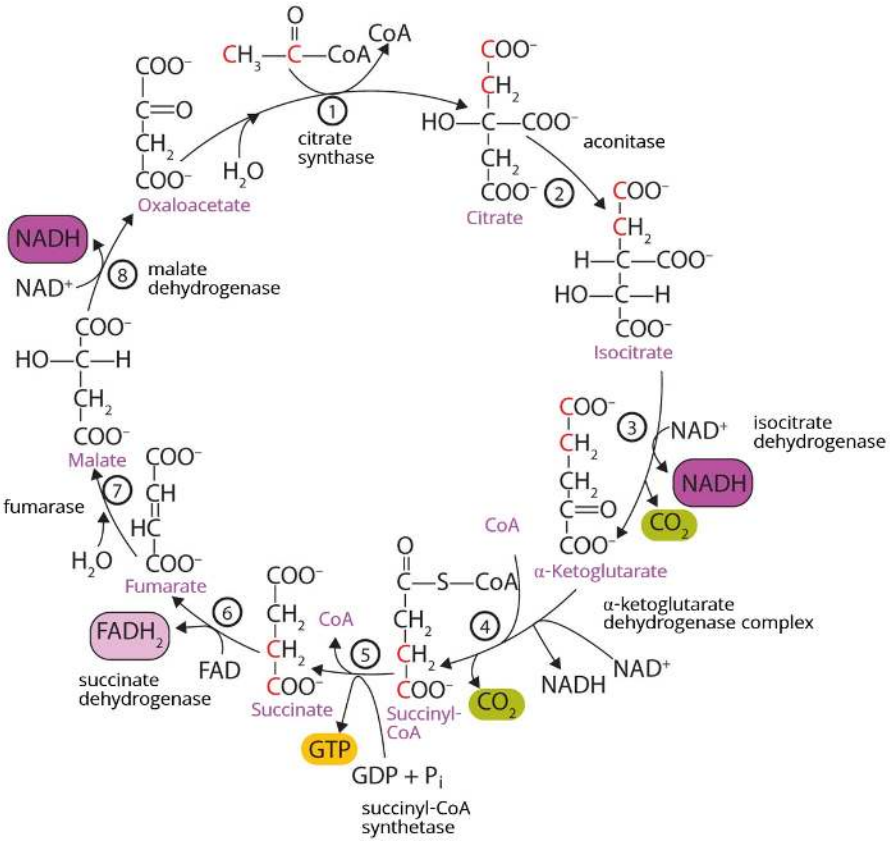


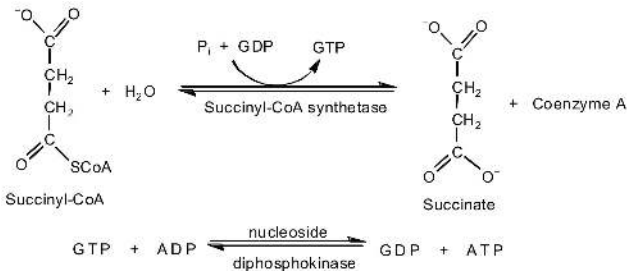
Figure 20.8.1: Reactions of the Citric Acid Cycle

1. In the first step, acetyl-CoA enters the citric acid cycle, and the acetyl group is transferred onto oxaloacetate, yielding citrate. Note that this step releases coenzyme A. The reaction is catalyzed by *citrate synthase*.
2. In the next step, *aconitase* catalyzes the isomerization of citrate to isocitrate. In this reaction, a tertiary alcohol, which cannot be oxidized, is converted to a secondary alcohol, which can be oxidized in the next step.

3. Isocitrate then undergoes a reaction known as oxidative decarboxylation because the alcohol is oxidized and the molecule is shortened by one carbon atom with the release of carbon dioxide (decarboxylation). The reaction is catalyzed by *isocitrate dehydrogenase*, and the product of the reaction is α-ketoglutarate. An important reaction linked to this is the reduction of the coenzyme nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+) to NADH. The NADH is ultimately reoxidized, and the energy released is used in the synthesis of ATP, as we shall see.
4. The fourth step is another oxidative decarboxylation. This time α-ketoglutarate is converted to succinyl-CoA, and another molecule of NAD^+ is reduced to NADH. The *α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase complex* catalyzes this reaction. This is the only irreversible reaction in the citric acid cycle. As such, it prevents the cycle from operating in the reverse direction, in which acetyl-CoA would be synthesized from carbon dioxide.

> So far, in the first four steps, two carbon atoms have entered the cycle as an acetyl group, and two carbon atoms have been released as molecules of carbon dioxide. The remaining reactions of the citric acid cycle use the four carbon atoms of the succinyl group to resynthesize a molecule of oxaloacetate, which is the compound needed to combine with an incoming acetyl group and begin another round of the cycle.

In the fifth reaction, the energy released by the hydrolysis of the high-energy thioester bond of succinyl-CoA is used to form guanosine triphosphate (GTP) from guanosine diphosphate (GDP) and inorganic phosphate in a reaction catalyzed by *succinyl-CoA synthetase*. This step is the only reaction in the citric acid cycle that directly forms a high-energy phosphate compound. GTP can readily transfer its terminal phosphate group to adenosine diphosphate (ADP) to generate ATP in the presence of *nucleoside diphosphokinase*.



Succinate dehydrogenase then catalyzes the removal of two hydrogen atoms from succinate, forming fumarate. This oxidation-reduction reaction uses flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD), rather than NAD^+, as the oxidizing agent. Succinate dehydrogenase is the only enzyme of the citric acid cycle located within the inner mitochondrial membrane. We will see soon the importance of this.

In the following step, a molecule of water is added to the double bond of fumarate to form L-malate in a reaction catalyzed by *fumarase*.

One revolution of the cycle is completed with the oxidation of L-malate to oxaloacetate, brought about by *malate dehydrogenase*. This is the third oxidation-reduction reaction that uses NAD^+ as the oxidizing agent. Oxaloacetate can accept an acetyl group from acetyl-CoA, allowing the cycle to begin again.

Video: "The Citric Acid Cycle: An Overview". In the matrix of the mitochondrion, the Citric Acid Cycle uses Acetyl CoA molecules to produce energy through eight chemical reactions. This animation provides an overview of the pathway and its products. NDSU VCell Production's animation; for more information please see http://vcell.ndsu.edu/animations.

20.8: The Citric Acid Cycle is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **20.4: Stage III of Catabolism** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

20.9: The Electron-Transport Chain and ATP Production

Learning Outcomes

- Summarize the electron transport chain.
- Recognize that electron transport chain is the third and final stage of aerobic cellular respiration.
- Identify the products of the citric acid cycle.

What do trains, trucks, boats, and planes all have in common? They are ways to transport. And they all use a lot of energy. To make ATP, energy must be "transported" - first from glucose to NADH, and then somehow passed to ATP. How is this done? With an electron transport chain, the third stage of aerobic respiration. This third stage uses energy to make energy.

The Electron Transport Chain: ATP for Life in the Fast Lane

At the end of the Krebs Cycle, energy from the chemical bonds of glucose is stored in diverse energy carrier molecules: four ATPs, but also two $FADH_2$ and ten NADH molecules. The primary task of the last stage of cellular respiration, the **electron transport chain**, is to transfer energy from the electron carriers to even more ATP molecules, the "batteries" which power work within the cell.

Pathways for making ATP in stage 3 of aerobic respiration closely resemble the electron transport chains used in photosynthesis. In both electron transport chains, energy carrier molecules are arranged in sequence within a membrane so that energy-carrying electrons cascade from one to another, losing a little energy in each step. In both photosynthesis and aerobic respiration, the energy lost is harnessed to pump hydrogen ions into a compartment, creating an **electrochemical gradient** or **chemiosmotic gradient** across the enclosing membrane. And in both processes, the energy stored in the chemiosmotic gradient is used with **ATP synthase** to build ATP.

For aerobic respiration, the electron transport chain or "respiratory chain" is embedded in the inner membrane of the mitochondria (see figure below). The $FADH_2$ and NADH molecules produced in glycolysis and the Krebs Cycle, donate high-energy electrons to energy carrier molecules within the membrane. As they pass from one carrier to another, the energy they lose is used to pump hydrogen ions into the mitochondrial intermembrane space, creating an electrochemical gradient. Hydrogen ions flow "down" the gradient - from outer to inner compartment - through the ion channel/enzyme ATP synthase, which transfers their energy to ATP. Note the paradox that it requires energy to create and maintain a concentration gradient of hydrogen ions that are then used by ATP synthase to create stored energy (ATP). In broad terms, it takes energy to make energy. Coupling the electron transport chain to ATP synthesis with a hydrogen ion gradient is **chemiosmosis**, first described by Nobel laureate Peter D. Mitchell. This process, the use of energy to phosphorylate ADP and produce ATP is also known as **oxidative phosphorylation**.

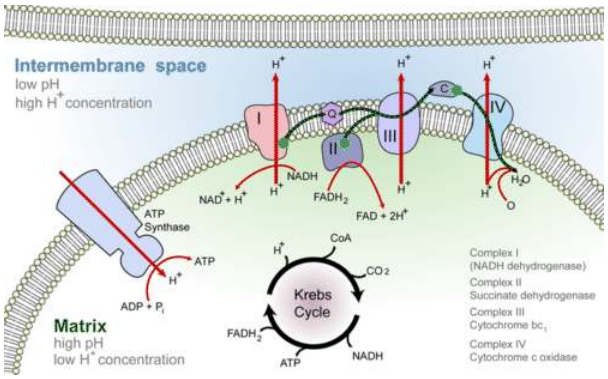


Figure 20.9.1: The third stage of cellular respiration uses the energy stored during the earlier stages in NADH and $FADH_2$ to make ATP. Electron transport chains embedded in the mitochondrial inner membrane capture high-energy electrons from the carrier molecules and use them to concentrate hydrogen ions in the intermembrane space. Hydrogen ions flow down their electrochemical gradient back into the matrix through ATP synthase channels which capture their energy to convert ADP to ATP. Notice that the process regenerates NAD^+, supplying the electron acceptor molecule needed in glycolysis. (CC BY-NC 3.0; Mariana Ruiz Villarreal (LadyofHats) for the CK-12 Foundation).

After passing through the electron transport chain, low-energy electrons and low-energy hydrogen ions combine with oxygen to form water. Thus, oxygen's role is to drive the entire set of ATP-producing reactions within the mitochondrion by accepting "spent"

hydrogens. Oxygen is the final electron acceptor, no part of the process - from the Krebs Cycle through the electron transport chain- can happen without oxygen.

The electron transport chain can convert the energy from one glucose molecule's worth of $FADH_2$ and $NADH$ + H^+ into as many as 34 ATP. When the four ATP produced in glycolysis and the Krebs Cycle are added, the total of 38 ATP fits the overall equation for aerobic cellular respiration:

$$6\,O_2 + \underbrace{C_6H_{12}O_6}_{\text{stored chemical energy}} + 38\,ADP + 39\,P_i \rightarrow \underbrace{38\,ATP}_{\text{stored chemical energy}} + 6\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O \tag{20.9.1}$$

Aerobic respiration is complete. If oxygen is available, cellular respiration transfers the energy from one molecule of glucose to 38 molecules of ATP, releasing carbon dioxide and water as waste. "Deliverable" food energy has become energy which can be used for work within the cell - transport within the cell, pumping ions and molecules across membranes, and building large organic molecules. Can you see how this could lead to "life in the fast lane" compared to anaerobic respiration (glycolysis alone)?

Contributors and Attributions

-
- Allison Soult, Ph.D. (Department of Chemistry, University of Kentucky)

20.9: The Electron-Transport Chain and ATP Production is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

20.10: Harmful Oxygen By-Products and Antioxidant Vitamins

21.10: Harmful Oxygen By-Products and Antioxidant Vitamins

20.10: Harmful Oxygen By-Products and Antioxidant Vitamins is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

21: Carbohydrates

21.1: An Introduction to Carbohydrates
21.2: Handedness of Carbohydrates
21.3: The D and L Families of Sugars- Drawing Sugar Molecules
21.4: Structure of Glucose and Other Monosaccharides
21.5: Some Important Monosaccharides
21.6: Reactions of Monosaccharides
21.7: Disaccharides
21.8: Variations on the Carbohydrate Theme
21.9: Some Important Polysaccharides

21: Carbohydrates is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

21.1: An Introduction to Carbohydrates

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

21.1: An Introduction to Carbohydrates is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

21.2: Handedness of Carbohydrates

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

21.2: Handedness of Carbohydrates is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

21.3: The D and L Families of Sugars- Drawing Sugar Molecules

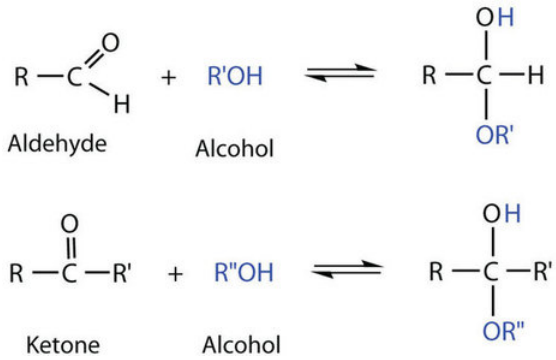
21.3: The D and L Families of Sugars- Drawing Sugar Molecules is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

21.4: Structure of Glucose and Other Monosaccharides

Learning Objectives

- Define what is meant by anomers and describe how they are formed.
- Explain what is meant by mutarotation.

So far we have represented monosaccharides as linear molecules, but many of them also adopt cyclic structures. This conversion occurs because of the ability of aldehydes and ketones to react with alcohols:



You might wonder why the aldehyde reacts with the OH group on the fifth carbon atom rather than the OH group on the second carbon atom next to it. Recall that cyclic alkanes containing five or six carbon atoms in the ring are the most stable. The same is true for monosaccharides that form cyclic structures: rings consisting of five or six carbon atoms are the most stable.

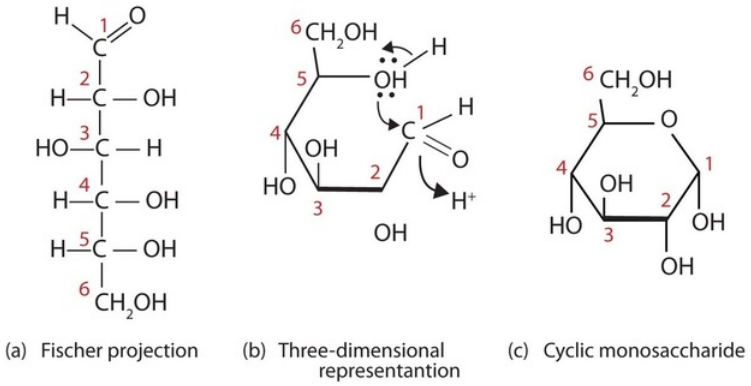


Figure 21.4.1: Cyclization of D-Glucose. D-Glucose can be represented with a Fischer projection (a) or three dimensionally (b). By reacting the OH group on the fifth carbon atom with the aldehyde group, the cyclic monosaccharide (c) is produced.

When a straight-chain monosaccharide, such as any of the structures shown in Figure 21.4.1, forms a cyclic structure, the carbonyl oxygen atom may be pushed either up or down, giving rise to two stereoisomers, as shown in Figure 21.4.2. The structure shown on the left side of Figure 21.4.2, with the OH group on the first carbon atom projected downward, represent what is called the *alpha (α) form*. The structures on the right side, with the OH group on the first carbon atom pointed upward, is the *beta (β) form*. These two stereoisomers of a cyclic monosaccharide are known as anomers; they differ in structure around the anomeric carbon—that is, the carbon atom that was the carbonyl carbon atom in the straight-chain form.

It is possible to obtain a sample of crystalline glucose in which all the molecules have the α structure or all have the β structure. The α form melts at 146°C and has a specific rotation of +112°, while the β form melts at 150°C and has a specific rotation of +18.7°. When the sample is dissolved in water, however, a mixture is soon produced containing both anomers as well as the straight-chain form, in dynamic equilibrium (part (a) of Figure 21.4.2). You can start with a pure crystalline sample of glucose consisting entirely of either anomer, but as soon as the molecules dissolve in water, they open to form the carbonyl group and then reclose to form either the α or the β anomer. The opening and closing repeats continuously in an ongoing interconversion between anomeric forms and is referred to as mutarotation (Latin *mutare*, meaning “to change”). At equilibrium, the mixture consists of about 36% α-D-glucose, 64% β-D-glucose, and less than 0.02% of the open-chain aldehyde form. The observed rotation of this solution is +52.7°.

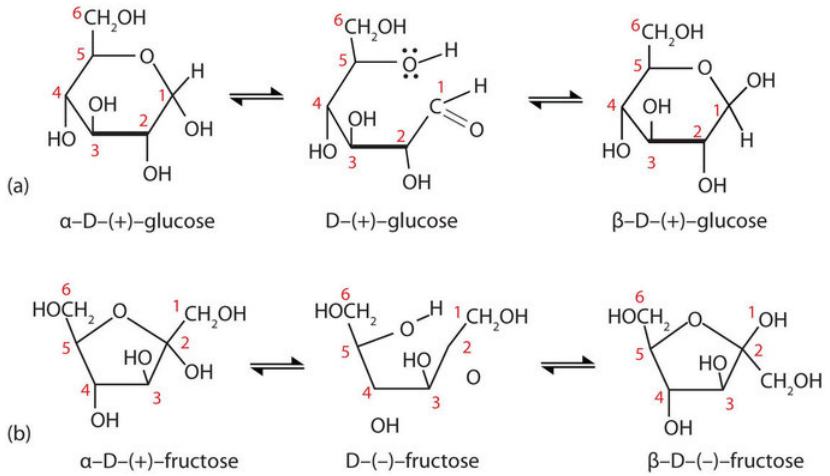


Figure 21.4.2: Monosaccharides. In an aqueous solution, monosaccharides exist as an equilibrium mixture of three forms. The interconversion between the forms is known as *mutarotation*, which is shown for D-glucose (a) and D-fructose (b).

Even though only a small percentage of the molecules are in the open-chain aldehyde form at any time, the solution will nevertheless exhibit the characteristic reactions of an aldehyde. As the small amount of free aldehyde is used up in a reaction, there is a shift in the equilibrium to yield more aldehyde. Thus, *all* the molecules may eventually react, even though very little free aldehyde is present at a time.

Commonly, (e.g., in Figures 21.4.1 and 21.4.2) the cyclic forms of sugars are depicted using a convention first suggested by Walter N. Haworth, an English chemist. The molecules are drawn as planar hexagons with a darkened edge representing the side facing toward the viewer. The structure is simplified to show only the functional groups attached to the carbon atoms. Any group written to the right in a Fischer projection appears below the plane of the ring in a Haworth projection, and any group written to the left in a Fischer projection appears above the plane in a Haworth projection.

The difference between the α and the β forms of sugars may seem trivial, but such structural differences are often crucial in biochemical reactions. This explains why we can get energy from the starch in potatoes and other plants but not from cellulose, even though both starch and cellulose are polysaccharides composed of glucose molecules linked together.

Summary

Monosaccharides that contain five or more carbons atoms form cyclic structures in aqueous solution. Two cyclic stereoisomers can form from each straight-chain monosaccharide; these are known as anomers. In an aqueous solution, an equilibrium mixture forms between the two anomers and the straight-chain structure of a monosaccharide in a process known as mutarotation.

21.4: Structure of Glucose and Other Monosaccharides is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **16.4: Cyclic Structures of Monosaccharides** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

21.5: Some Important Monosaccharides

Learning Objectives

- To identify the structures of D-glucose, D-galactose, and D-fructose and describe how they differ from each other.

Although a variety of monosaccharides are found in living organisms, three hexoses are particularly abundant: D-glucose, D-galactose, and D-fructose (Figure 21.5.1). Glucose and galactose are both aldohexoses, while fructose is a ketohexose.

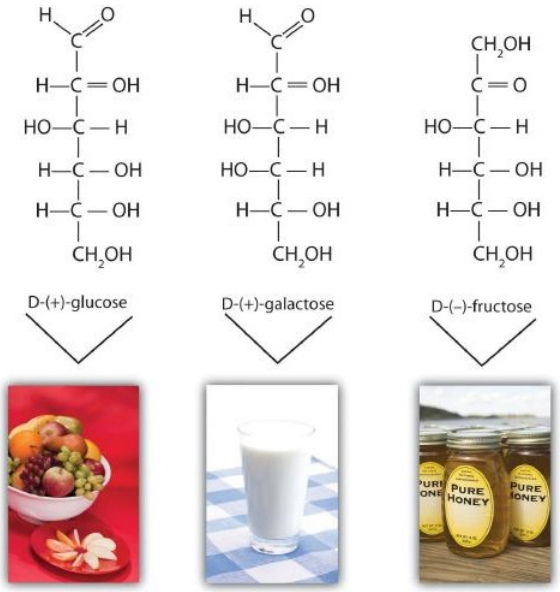


Figure 21.5.1: Structures of Three Important Hexoses. Each hexose is pictured with a food source in which it is commonly found. Source: Photos © Thinkstock.

Glucose

D-Glucose, generally referred to as simply glucose, is the most abundant sugar found in nature; most of the carbohydrates we eat are eventually converted to it in a series of biochemical reactions that produce energy for our cells. It is also known by three other names: *dextrose*, from the fact that it rotates plane-polarized light in a clockwise (dextrorotatory) direction; *corn sugar* because in the United States cornstarch is used in the commercial process that produces glucose from the hydrolysis of starch; and *blood sugar* because it is the carbohydrate found in the circulatory system of animals. Normal blood sugar values range from 70 to 105 mg glucose/dL plasma, and normal urine may contain anywhere from a trace to 20 mg glucose/dL urine.

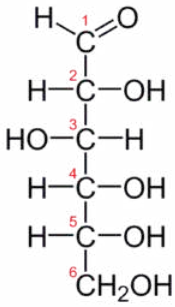


Figure 21.5.2: Fischer projection of D-glucose

The Fischer projection of D-glucose is given in Figure 21.5.2 Glucose is a D sugar because the OH group on the fifth carbon atom (the chiral center farthest from the carbonyl group) is on the right. In fact, all the OH groups except the one on the third carbon atom are to the right.

21.5: Some Important Monosaccharides is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **16.3: Important Hexoses** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

21.6: Reactions of Monosaccharides

Learning Objectives

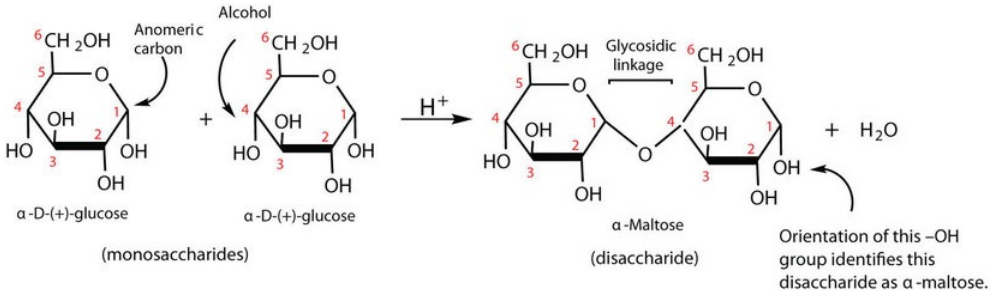
- Identify the structures of sucrose, lactose, and maltose.
- Identify the monosaccharides that are needed to form sucrose, lactose, and maltose
-

Reducing Sugars

Sugar Alcohols

Disaccharide Formation

Previously, you learned that monosaccharides can form cyclic structures by the reaction of the carbonyl group with an OH group. These cyclic molecules can in turn react with another alcohol. Disaccharides ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$) are sugars composed of two monosaccharide units that are joined by a carbon–oxygen-carbon linkage known as a glycosidic linkage. This linkage is formed from the reaction of the anomeric carbon of one cyclic monosaccharide with the OH group of a second monosaccharide.



The disaccharides differ from one another in their monosaccharide constituents and in the specific type of glycosidic linkage connecting them. There are three common disaccharides: maltose, lactose, and sucrose. All three are white crystalline solids at room temperature and are soluble in water. We'll consider each sugar in more detail.

21.6: Reactions of Monosaccharides is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **16.6: Disaccharides** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

21.7: Disaccharides

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

Maltose

Maltose occurs to a limited extent in sprouting grain. It is formed most often by the partial hydrolysis of starch and glycogen. In the manufacture of beer, maltose is liberated by the action of malt (germinating barley) on starch; for this reason, it is often referred to as *malt sugar*. Maltose is about 30% as sweet as sucrose. The human body is unable to metabolize maltose or any other disaccharide directly from the diet because the molecules are too large to pass through the cell membranes of the intestinal wall. Therefore, an ingested disaccharide must first be broken down by hydrolysis into its two constituent monosaccharide units.

In the body, such hydrolysis reactions are catalyzed by enzymes such as *maltase*. The same reactions can be carried out in the laboratory with dilute acid as a catalyst, although in that case the rate is much slower, and high temperatures are required. Whether it occurs in the body or a glass beaker, the hydrolysis of maltose produces two molecules of D-glucose.

$$\text{maltose} \xrightarrow{\text{H}^+ \text{ or maltase}} 2 \text{ D-glucose} \tag{16.6.2}$$

Maltose is a reducing sugar. Thus, its two glucose molecules must be linked in such a way as to leave one anomeric carbon that can open to form an aldehyde group. The glucose units in maltose are joined in a *head-to-tail* fashion through an α-linkage from the first carbon atom of one glucose molecule to the fourth carbon atom of the second glucose molecule (that is, an α-1,4-glycosidic linkage; see Figure 21.7.1). The bond from the anomeric carbon of the first monosaccharide unit is directed downward, which is why this is known as an α-glycosidic linkage. The OH group on the anomeric carbon of the second glucose can be in either the α or the β position, as shown in Figure 21.7.1.

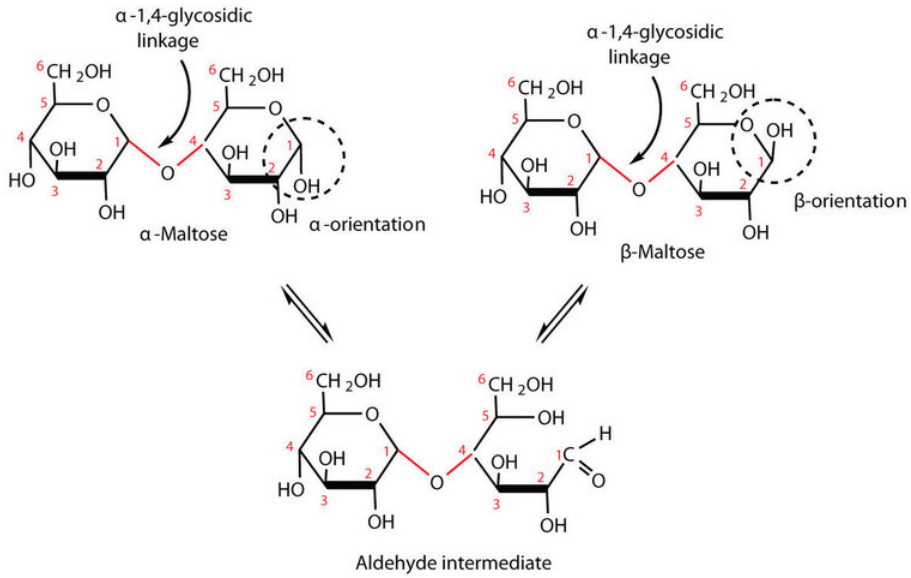


Figure 21.7.1: An Equilibrium Mixture of Maltose Isomers

21.7: Disaccharides is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **16.6: Disaccharides** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

21.8: Variations on the Carbohydrate Theme

20.08: Variations on the Carbohydrate Theme

21.8: Variations on the Carbohydrate Theme is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

21.9: Some Important Polysaccharides

Learning Objectives

- To compare and contrast the structures and uses of starch, glycogen, and cellulose.

The polysaccharides are the most abundant carbohydrates in nature and serve a variety of functions, such as energy storage or as components of plant cell walls. Polysaccharides are very large polymers composed of tens to thousands of monosaccharides joined together by glycosidic linkages. The three most abundant polysaccharides are starch, glycogen, and cellulose. These three are referred to as *homopolymers* because each yields only one type of monosaccharide (glucose) after complete hydrolysis. *Heteropolymers* may contain sugar acids, amino sugars, or noncarbohydrate substances in addition to monosaccharides. Heteropolymers are common in nature (gums, pectins, and other substances) but will not be discussed further in this textbook. The polysaccharides are nonreducing carbohydrates, are not sweet tasting, and do not undergo mutarotation.

Starch

Starch is the most important source of carbohydrates in the human diet and accounts for more than 50% of our carbohydrate intake. It occurs in plants in the form of granules, and these are particularly abundant in seeds (especially the cereal grains) and tubers, where they serve as a storage form of carbohydrates. The breakdown of starch to glucose nourishes the plant during periods of reduced photosynthetic activity. We often think of potatoes as a “starchy” food, yet other plants contain a much greater percentage of starch (potatoes 15%, wheat 55%, corn 65%, and rice 75%). Commercial starch is a white powder.

Starch is a mixture of two polymers: amylose and amylopectin. Natural starches consist of about 10%–30% amylose and 70%–90% amylopectin. Amylose is a linear polysaccharide composed entirely of D-glucose units joined by the α-1,4-glycosidic linkages we saw in maltose (part (a) of Figure 21.9.1). Experimental evidence indicates that amylose is not a straight chain of glucose units but instead is coiled like a spring, with six glucose monomers per turn (part (b) of Figure 21.9.1). When coiled in this fashion, amylose has just enough room in its core to accommodate an iodine molecule. The characteristic blue-violet color that appears when starch is treated with iodine is due to the formation of the amylose-iodine complex. This color test is sensitive enough to detect even minute amounts of starch in solution.

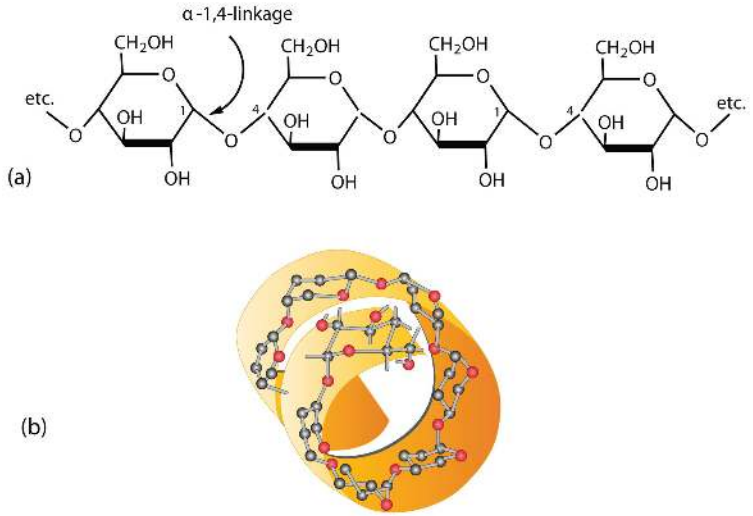


Figure 21.9.1: Amylose. (a) Amylose is a linear chain of α-D-glucose units joined together by α-1,4-glycosidic bonds. (b) Because of hydrogen bonding, amylose acquires a spiral structure that contains six glucose units per turn.

Amylopectin is a branched-chain polysaccharide composed of glucose units linked primarily by α-1,4-glycosidic bonds but with occasional α-1,6-glycosidic bonds, which are responsible for the branching. A molecule of amylopectin may contain many thousands of glucose units with branch points occurring about every 25–30 units (Figure 21.9.2). The helical structure of amylopectin is disrupted by the branching of the chain, so instead of the deep blue-violet color amylose gives with iodine, amylopectin produces a less intense reddish brown.

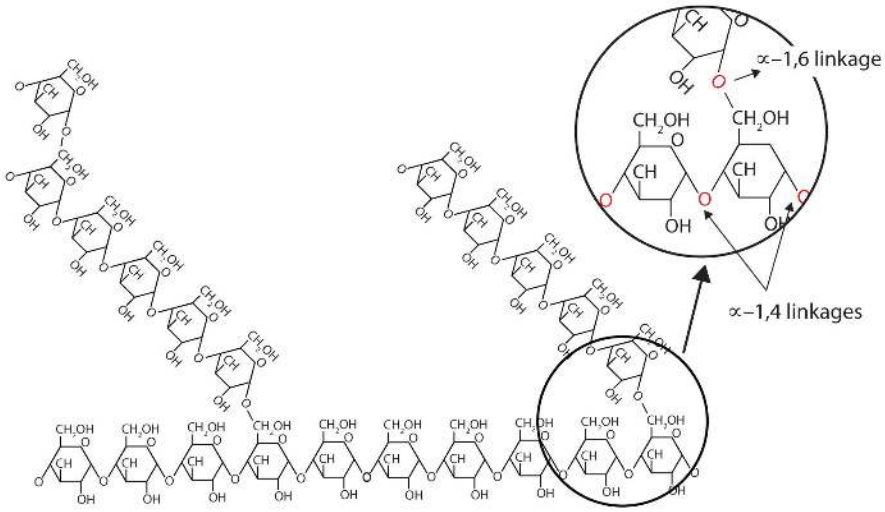


Figure 21.9.2: Representation of the Branching in Amylopectin and Glycogen. Both amylopectin and glycogen contain branch points that are linked through α-1,6-linkages. These branch points occur more often in glycogen.

Dextrins are glucose polysaccharides of intermediate size. The shine and stiffness imparted to clothing by starch are due to the presence of dextrins formed when clothing is ironed. Because of their characteristic stickiness with wetting, dextrins are used as adhesives on stamps, envelopes, and labels; as binders to hold pills and tablets together; and as pastes. Dextrins are more easily digested than starch and are therefore used extensively in the commercial preparation of infant foods.

The complete hydrolysis of starch yields, in successive stages, glucose:

$$\text{starch} \rightarrow \text{dextrins} \rightarrow \text{maltose} \rightarrow \text{glucose}$$

In the human body, several enzymes known collectively as amylases degrade starch sequentially into usable glucose units.

- ## Glycogen

  Glycogen is the energy reserve carbohydrate of animals. Practically all mammalian cells contain some stored carbohydrates in the form of glycogen, but it is especially abundant in the liver (4%–8% by weight of tissue) and in skeletal muscle cells (0.5%–1.0%). Like starch in plants, glycogen is found as granules in liver and muscle cells. When fasting, animals draw on these glycogen reserves during the first day without food to obtain the glucose needed to maintain metabolic balance.

  Glycogen is structurally quite similar to amylopectin, although glycogen is more highly branched (8–12 glucose units between branches) and the branches are shorter. When treated with iodine, glycogen gives a reddish brown color. Glycogen can be broken down into its D-glucose subunits by acid hydrolysis or by the same enzymes that catalyze the breakdown of starch. In animals, the enzyme phosphorylase catalyzes the breakdown of glycogen to phosphate esters of glucose.

  > *About 70% of the total glycogen in the body is stored in muscle cells. Although the percentage of glycogen (by weight) is higher in the liver, the much greater mass of skeletal muscle stores a greater total amount of glycogen.*

Cellulose

Cellulose, a fibrous carbohydrate found in all plants, is the structural component of plant cell walls. Because the earth is covered with vegetation, cellulose is the most abundant of all carbohydrates, accounting for over 50% of all the carbon found in the vegetable kingdom. Cotton fibrils and filter paper are almost entirely cellulose (about 95%), wood is about 50% cellulose, and the dry weight of leaves is about 10%–20% cellulose. The largest use of cellulose is in the manufacture of paper and paper products. Although the use of noncellulose synthetic fibers is increasing, rayon (made from cellulose) and cotton still account for over 70% of textile production.

Like amylose, cellulose is a linear polymer of glucose. It differs, however, in that the glucose units are joined by β-1,4-glycosidic linkages, producing a more extended structure than amylose (part (a) of Figure 21.9.3). This extreme linearity allows a great deal of hydrogen bonding between OH groups on adjacent chains, causing them to pack closely into fibers (part (b) of

Figure 21.9.3). As a result, cellulose exhibits little interaction with water or any other solvent. Cotton and wood, for example, are completely insoluble in water and have considerable mechanical strength. Because cellulose does not have a helical structure, it does not bind to iodine to form a colored product.

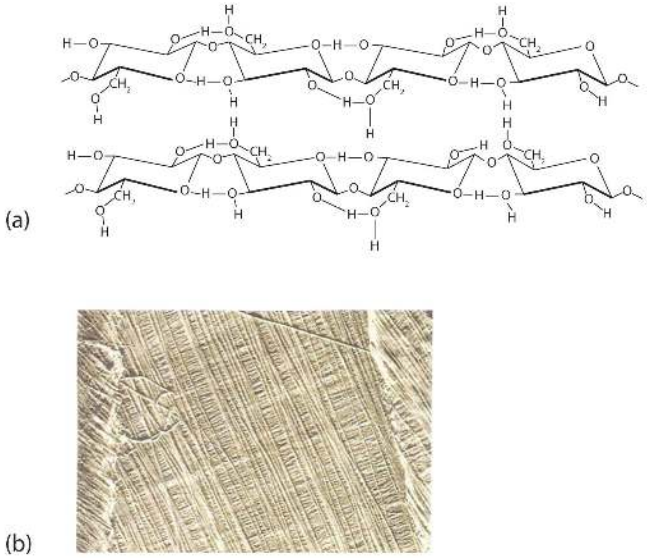


Figure 21.9.3: Cellulose. (a) There is extensive hydrogen bonding in the structure of cellulose. (b) In this electron micrograph of the cell wall of an alga, the wall consists of successive layers of cellulose fibers in parallel arrangement.

Cellulose yields D-glucose after complete acid hydrolysis, yet humans are unable to metabolize cellulose as a source of glucose. Our digestive juices lack enzymes that can hydrolyze the β-glycosidic linkages found in cellulose, so although we can eat potatoes, we cannot eat grass. However, certain microorganisms can digest cellulose because they make the enzyme cellulase, which catalyzes the hydrolysis of cellulose. The presence of these microorganisms in the digestive tracts of herbivorous animals (such as cows, horses, and sheep) allows these animals to degrade the cellulose from plant material into glucose for energy. Termites also contain cellulase-secreting microorganisms and thus can subsist on a wood diet. This example once again demonstrates the extreme stereospecificity of biochemical processes.

Career Focus: Certified Diabetes Educator

Certified diabetes educators come from a variety of health professions, such as nursing and dietetics, and specialize in the education and treatment of patients with diabetes. A diabetes educator will work with patients to manage their diabetes. This involves teaching the patient to monitor blood sugar levels, make good food choices, develop and maintain an exercise program, and take medication, if required.

A certified diabetes educator at Naval Medical Center Portsmouth (left) and a registered dietician at the medical center (center), provide nutritional information to a diabetes patient and her mother at the Diabetes Boot Camp.

Diabetes educators also work with hospital or nursing home staff to improve the care of diabetic patients. Educators must be willing to spend time attending meetings and reading the current literature to maintain their knowledge of diabetes medications, nutrition, and blood monitoring devices so that they can pass this information to their patients.

Summary

Starch is a storage form of energy in plants. It contains two polymers composed of glucose units: amylose (linear) and amylopectin (branched). Glycogen is a storage form of energy in animals. It is a branched polymer composed of glucose units. It is more highly branched than amylopectin. Cellulose is a structural polymer of glucose units found in plants. It is a linear polymer with the glucose units linked through β-1,4-glycosidic bonds.

Concept Review Exercises

Answers

Exercises

Answers

1. What purposes do starch and cellulose serve in plants?
2. What purpose does glycogen serve in animals?
3. Starch is the storage form of glucose (energy) in plants, while cellulose is a structural component of the plant cell wall.
4. Glycogen is the storage form of glucose (energy) in animals.
5. What monosaccharide is obtained from the hydrolysis of each carbohydrate?
   a. starch
   b. cellulose
   c. glycogen
6. For each carbohydrate listed in Exercise 1, indicate whether it is found in plants or mammals.
7. Describe the similarities and differences between amylose and cellulose.
8. Describe the similarities and differences between amylopectin and glycogen.
9. a. glucose
   b. glucose
   c. glucose
10. Amylose and cellulose are both linear polymers of glucose units, but the glycosidic linkages between the glucose units differ. The linkages in amylose are α-1,4-glycosidic linkages, while the linkages in cellulose they are β-1,4-glycosidic linkages.

21.9: Some Important Polysaccharides is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **16.7: Polysaccharides** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

22: Carbohydrate Metabolism

22.1: Digestion of Carbohydrates
22.2: Glucose Metabolism - An Overview
22.3: Glycolysis
22.4: Entry of Other Sugars into Glycolysis
22.5: The Fate of Pyruvate
22.6: Energy Output in Complete Catabolism of Glucose
22.7: 22.7. Regulation of Glucose Metabolism and Energy Production
22.8: Metabolism in Fasting and Starvation
22.9: Metabolism in Diabetes Mellitus
22.10: Glycogen Metabolism- Glycogenesis and Glycogenolysis
22.11: Gluconeogenesis- Glucose from Noncarbohydrates

Thumbnail: Pyruvic acid is the simplest of the alpha-keto acids, with a carboxylic acid and a ketone functional group. Pyruvic acid supplies energy to cells through the citric acid cycle (also known as the Krebs cycle) when oxygen is present (aerobic respiration), and alternatively ferments to produce lactate when oxygen is lacking (fermentation). Imag esed with permission (Public Domain; Benjah-bmm27).

22: Carbohydrate Metabolism is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

22.1: Digestion of Carbohydrates

Learning Objectives

- Describe digestion of carbohydrates.

The first stage of catabolism is **digestion**, in which food molecules are broken down into smaller molecules. Carbohydrate digestion begins in the mouth (Figure 22.1.1) where salivary α-amylase attacks the α-glycosidic linkages in starch, the main carbohydrate ingested by humans. Cleavage of the glycosidic linkages produces a mixture of dextrins, maltose, and glucose. The α-amylase mixed into the food remains active as the food passes through the esophagus, but it is rapidly inactivated in the acidic environment of the stomach.

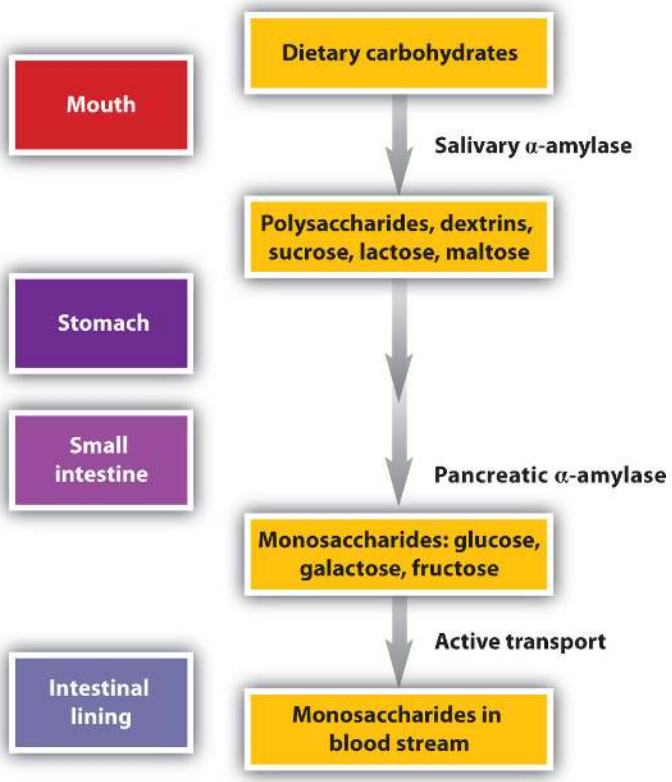


Figure 22.1.1: The Principal Events and Sites of Carbohydrate Digestion

The primary site of carbohydrate digestion is the small intestine. The secretion of α-amylase in the small intestine converts any remaining starch molecules, as well as the dextrins, to maltose. Maltose is then cleaved into two glucose molecules by maltase. Disaccharides such as sucrose and lactose are not digested until they reach the small intestine, where they are acted on by sucrase and lactase, respectively. The major products of the complete hydrolysis of disaccharides and polysaccharides are three monosaccharide units: glucose, fructose, and galactose. These are absorbed through the wall of the small intestine into the bloodstream.

22.1: Digestion of Carbohydrates is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **20.2: Stage I of Catabolism** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

22.2: Glucose Metabolism - An Overview

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

22.2: Glucose Metabolism - An Overview is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

22.3: Glycolysis

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

Glycolysis is the catabolic process in which glucose is converted into pyruvate via ten enzymatic steps. There are three regulatory steps, each of which is highly regulated.

Introduction

There are two phases of Glycolysis:

1. the "priming phase" because it requires an input of energy in the form of 2 ATPs per glucose molecule and
2. the "pay off phase" because energy is released in the form of 4 ATPs, 2 per glyceraldehyde molecule.

The end result of Glycolysis is two new pyruvate molecules which can then be fed into the Citric Acid cycle (also known as the Kreb's Cycle) if oxygen is present, or can be reduced to lactate or ethanol in the absence of of oxygen using a process known as Fermentation. Glycolysis occurs within almost all living cells and is the primary source of Acetyl-CoA, which is the molecule responsible for the majority of energy output under aerobic conditions. The structures of Glycolysis intermediates can be found in the following diagram:

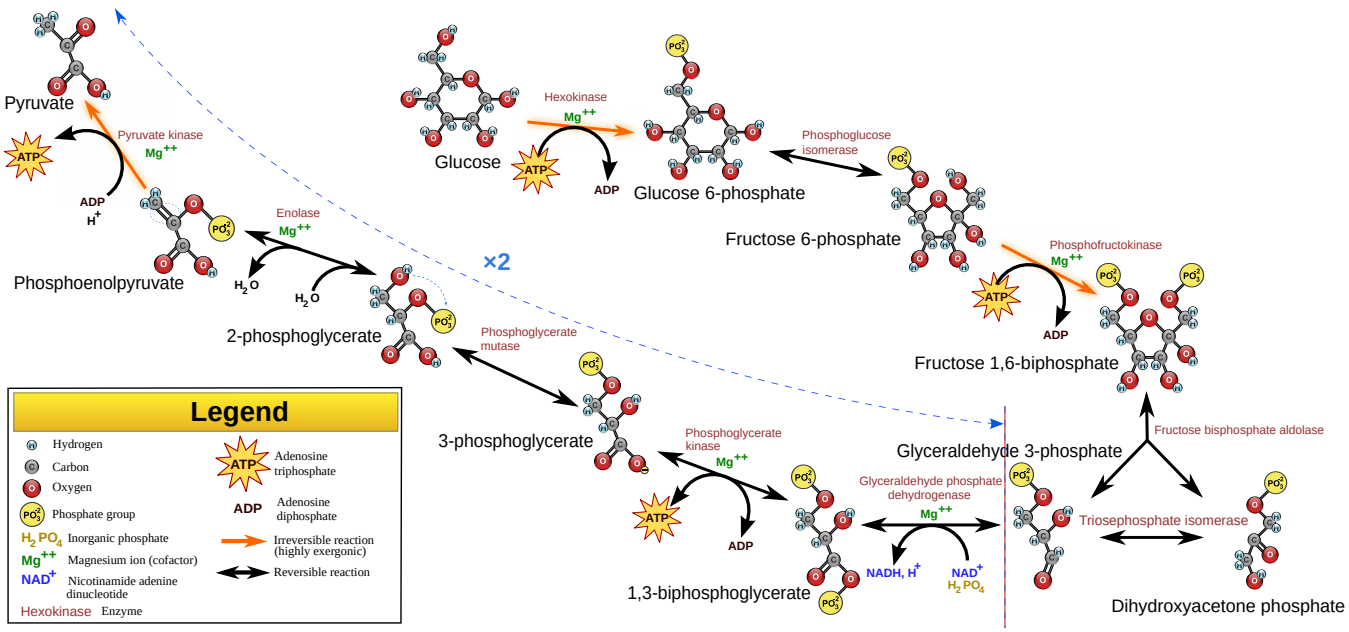


Figure 1: Glycolysis pathway. from Wikipedia (CCBY-SA 3.0; YassineMrabet).

Phase 1: The "Priming Step"

The first phase of Glycolysis requires an input of energy in the form of ATP (adenosine triphosphate).

1. alpha-D-Glucose is phosphorolated at the 6 carbon by ATP via the enzyme Hexokinase (Class: Transferase) to yield alpha-D-Glucose-6-phosphate (G-6-P). This is a regulatory step which is negatively regulated by the presence of glucose-6-phosphate.
2. alpha-D-Glucose-6-phosphate is then converted into D-Fructose-6-phosphate (F-6-P) by Phosphoglucoisomerase (Class: Isomerase)
3. D-Fructose-6-phosphate is once again phosphorolated this time at the 1 carbon position by ATP via the enzyme Phosphofructokinase (Class: Transferase) to yield D-Fructose-1,6-bisphosphate (FBP). This is the committed step of glycolysis because of its large ΔG value.
4. D-Fructose-1,6-bisphosphate is then cleaved into two, three carbon molecules; Dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP) and D-Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate (G-3-P) by the enzyme Fructose bisphosphate aldolase (Class: Lyase)

5. Because the next portion of Glycolysis requires the molecule D-Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate to continue Dihydroxyacetone phosphate is converted into D-Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate by the enzyme Triose phosphate isomerase (Class: Isomerase)

Phase 2: The "Pay Off Step"

The second phase of Glycolysis where 4 molecules of ATP are produced per molecule of glucose. Enzymes appear in red:

1. D-Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate is phosphorolated at the 1 carbon by the enzyme Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehodrogenase to yield the high energy molecule 1,3-Bisphosphoglycerate (BPG)
2. ADP is then phosphorolated at the expense of 1,3-Bisphosphoglycerate by the enzyme Phosphoglycerate kinase (Class: Transferase) to yield ATP and 3-Phosphoglycerate (3-PG)
3. 3-Phosphoglycerate is then converted into 2-Phosphoglycerate by Phosphoglycerate mutase in preparation to yield another high energy molecule
4. 2-Phosphoglycerate is then converted to phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP) by Enolase. H_2O, potassium, and magnesium are all released as a result.
5. ADP is once again phosphorolated, this time at the expense of PEP by the enzyme pyruvate kinase to yield another molecule of ATP and and pyruvate. This step is regulated by the energy in the cell. The higher the energy of the cell the more inhibited pyruvate kinase becomes. Indicators of high energy levels within the cell are high concentrations of ATP, Acetyl-CoA, Alanine, and cAMP.

Because Glucose is split to yield two molecules of D-Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate, each step in the "Pay Off" phase occurs twice per molecule of glucose.

References

1. Garrett, H., Reginald and Charles Grisham. Biochemistry. Boston: Twayne Publishers, 2008.
2. Raven, Peter. Biology. Boston: Twayne Publishers, 2005.

Problems

1. What is the net yield of Glycolysis as far as ATP?
2. Name the enzymes that are key regulatory sites in Glycolysis.
3. Why are the enzymes in the previous question targets for regulation?
4. Why is the priming phase necessary?
5. Draw the entire pathway for glycolysis including enzymes, reactants and products for each step.

Contributors and Attributions

- Darik Benson, (University California Davis)

22.3: Glycolysis is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **Glycolysis** by Darik Benson is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

22.4: Entry of Other Sugars into Glycolysis

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

22.4: Entry of Other Sugars into Glycolysis is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

22.5: The Fate of Pyruvate

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

22.5: The Fate of Pyruvate is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

22.6: Energy Output in Complete Catabolism of Glucose

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

22.6: Energy Output in Complete Catabolism of Glucose is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

22.7: 22.7. Regulation of Glucose Metabolism and Energy Production

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

22.7: 22.7. Regulation of Glucose Metabolism and Energy Production is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

22.8: Metabolism in Fasting and Starvation

22.08: Metabolism in Fasting and Starvation

22.8: Metabolism in Fasting and Starvation is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

22.9: Metabolism in Diabetes Mellitus

22.09: Metabolism in Diabetes Mellitus

22.9: Metabolism in Diabetes Mellitus is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

22.10: Glycogen Metabolism- Glycogenesis and Glycogenolysis

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

22.10: Glycogen Metabolism- Glycogenesis and Glycogenolysis is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

22.11: Gluconeogenesis- Glucose from Noncarbohydrates

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

22.11: Gluconeogenesis- Glucose from Noncarbohydrates is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

23: Lipids

23.1: Structure and Classification of Lipids
23.2: Fatty Acids and Their Esters
23.3: Properties of Fats and Oils
23.4: Chemical Reactions of Triacylglycerols
23.5: Phospholipids and Glycolipids
23.6: Sterols
23.7: Structure of Cell Membranes
23.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes
23.9: Eicosanoids- Prostaglandins and Leukotrienes

23: Lipids is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

23.1: Structure and Classification of Lipids

Learning Objectives

- Define lipids and recognize the different classes.

Fats and oils, found in many of the foods we eat, belong to a class of biomolecules known as **lipids**. Gram for gram, they pack more than twice the caloric content of carbohydrates: the oxidation of fats and oils supplies about 9 kcal of energy for every gram oxidized, whereas the oxidation of carbohydrates supplies only 4 kcal/g. Although the high caloric content of fats may be bad news for the dieter, it says something about the efficiency of nature's designs. Our bodies use carbohydrates, primarily in the form of glucose, for our *immediate* energy needs. Our capacity for storing carbohydrates for later use is limited to tucking away a bit of glycogen in the liver or in muscle tissue. We store our *reserve* energy in lipid form, which requires far less space than the same amount of energy stored in carbohydrate form. Lipids have other biological functions besides energy storage. They are a major component of the membranes of the 10 trillion cells in our bodies. They serve as protective padding and insulation for vital organs. Furthermore, without lipids in our diets, we would be deficient in the fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, and K.

Lipids are not defined by the presence of specific functional groups, as carbohydrates are, but by a physical property—solubility. Compounds isolated from body tissues are classified as lipids if they are more soluble in organic solvents, such as dichloromethane, than in water. By this criterion, the lipid category includes not only fats and oils, which are esters of the trihydroxy alcohol glycerol and fatty acids, but also compounds that incorporate functional groups derived from phosphoric acid, carbohydrates, or amino alcohols, as well as steroid compounds such as cholesterol (Figure 23.1.1 presents one scheme for classifying the various kinds of lipids). We will discuss the various kinds of lipids by considering one subclass at a time and pointing out structural similarities and differences as we go.

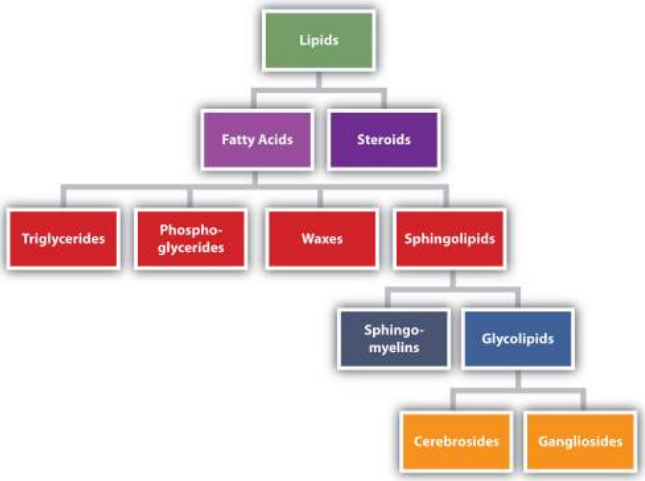


Figure 23.1.1: Lipid Organization Based on Structural Relationships

Lipids Formed from Fatty Acids

Fatty acids are carboxylic acids with 12-22 carbon atoms connected in a long, unbranched chain. As shown in the diagram above, most lipids are classified as *esters* or *amides* of fatty acids.

- *Waxes* are esters formed from long-chain fatty acids and long-chain alcohols. Most natural waxes are mixtures of such esters.
- *Triacylglycerol* (triglycerides) are esters of glycerol, a trialcohol, and three fatty acids. Many organisms store energy in this form.
- *Glycerophospholipids* are esters of glycerol formed from two fatty acid chains and a charged phosphate.

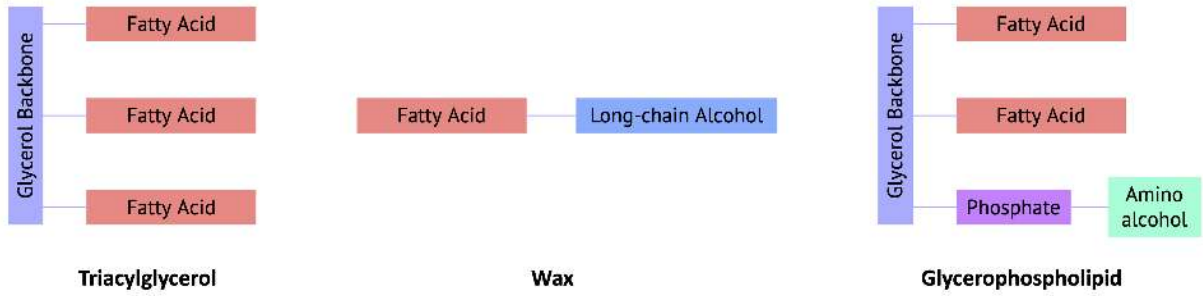


Figure 23.1.2: Esters of Fatty Acids: Triglycerides, Waxes, and Glycerophospholipids.

- *Sphingolipids* are fatty acid amides formed from a fatty acid attached to an amino alcohol backbone, called sphingosine, along with either a phosphate (*sphingomyelin*) or a carbohydrate (*glycolipid*). These along with glycerophospholipids are important for the structure and function of cellular membranes.

Other Lipids

Not all lipids contain fatty acid groups:

- *Sterols* (also classified as steroids) all contain the steroid nucleus, which is four fused rings. *Cholesterol* is the most commonly known sterol and is also an important lipid in cell membranes.
- *Eicosanoids* are important chemical messengers that include *prostaglandins*, which have a five-member ring and a carboxylic acid chain.

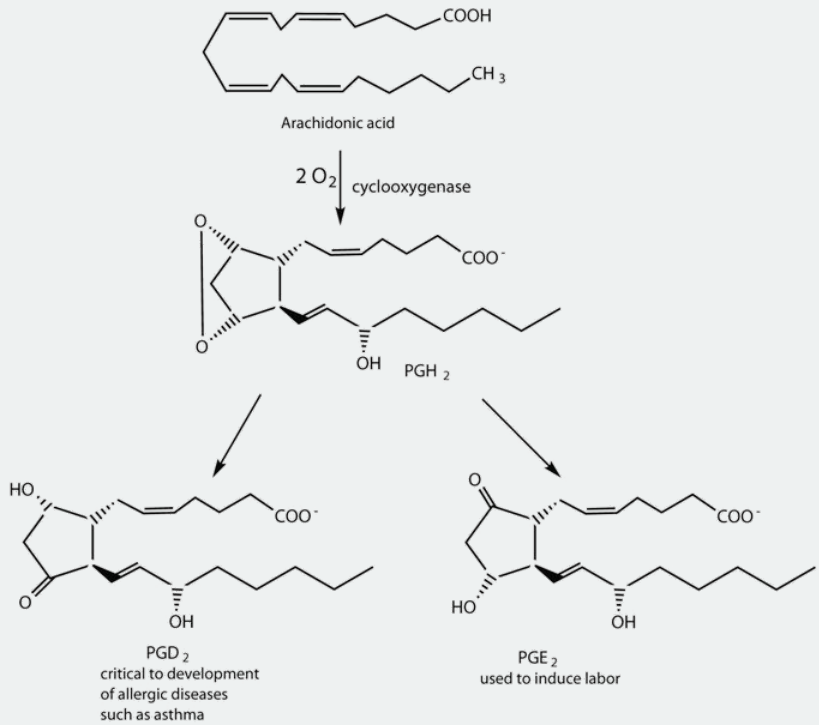
Figure 23.1.3: Other Lipids: Cholesterol contains the steroid nucleus (top) and a prostaglandin (bottom).

In the next sections of this chapter you will learn more about the structure, properties, and functions of each of these types of lipid.

To Your Health: Prostaglandins

Prostaglandins are chemical messengers synthesized in the cells in which their physiological activity is expressed. They are unsaturated fatty acids containing 20 carbon atoms and are synthesized from arachidonic acid—a polyunsaturated fatty acid—when needed by a particular cell. They are called *prostaglandins* because they were originally isolated from semen found in the prostate gland. It is now known that they are synthesized in nearly all mammalian tissues and affect almost all organs in the body. The five major classes of prostaglandins are designated as PGA, PGB, PGE, PGF, and PGI. Subscripts are attached at the end of these abbreviations to denote the number of double bonds outside the five-carbon ring in a given prostaglandin.

The prostaglandins are among the most potent biological substances known. Slight structural differences give them highly distinct biological effects; however, all prostaglandins exhibit some ability to induce smooth muscle contraction, lower blood pressure, and contribute to the inflammatory response. Aspirin and other nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents, such as ibuprofen, obstruct the synthesis of prostaglandins by inhibiting cyclooxygenase, the enzyme needed for the initial step in the conversion of arachidonic acid to prostaglandins.



Their wide range of physiological activity has led to the synthesis of hundreds of prostaglandins and their analogs. Derivatives of PGE_2 are now used in the United States to induce labor. Other prostaglandins have been employed clinically to lower or increase blood pressure, inhibit stomach secretions, relieve nasal congestion, relieve asthma, and prevent the formation of blood clots, which are associated with heart attacks and strokes.

23.1: Structure and Classification of Lipids is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **17.0: Prelude to Lipids** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **17.1: Fatty Acids** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

23.2: Fatty Acids and Their Esters

Learning Objectives

- To recognize the structures of common fatty acids and classify them as saturated, monounsaturated, or polyunsaturated.
- Describe characteristics of fatty acid esters.

Fatty acids are carboxylic acids that are structural components of fats, oils, and all other categories of lipids, except steroids. More than 70 have been identified in nature. They usually contain an even number of carbon atoms (typically 12–20), are generally unbranched, and can be classified by the presence and number of carbon-to-carbon double bonds. Thus, Fatty acids may be **saturated**, containing all carbon-carbon *single* bonds, or **unsaturated**, containing at least one or more carbon-carbon *double* bonds. Saturated fatty acids are *saturated with hydrogens*; in other words, the number of hydrogen atoms attached to the carbon skeleton is maximized. Stearic acid is an example of a saturated fatty acid (Figure 23.2.1).

When the hydrocarbon chain contains a double bond, there are less hydrogens attached to the carbon skeleton and the fatty acid is said to be unsaturated. Oleic acid is an example of a *monounsaturated* fatty acid (Figure 23.2.1), because it contains one double bond. A fatty acid with two or more double bonds is a *polyunsaturated* fat. The atoms or groups around the double bonds in unsaturated fatty acids can be arranged in either the *cis* or *trans* isomeric form, compare *cis* vs. *trans* oleic acid in (Figure 23.2.1). Naturally occurring fatty acids are generally in the *cis* configuration.

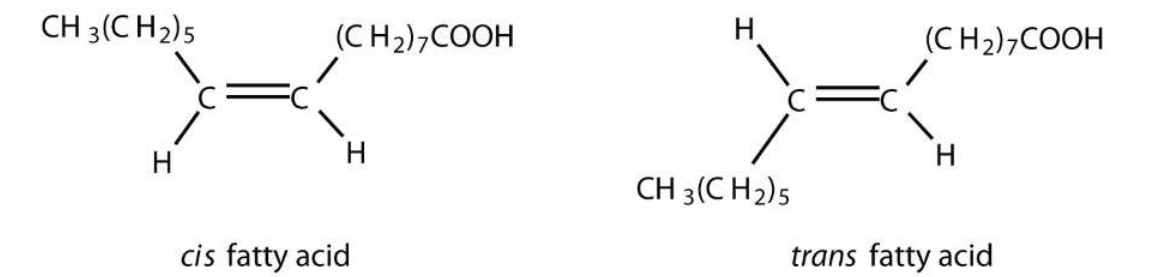


Figure 23.2.1: Saturated fatty acids have hydrocarbon chains connected by single bonds only. Unsaturated fatty acids have one or more double bonds. Each double bond may be in a *cis* or *trans* configuration. In the *cis* configuration, both hydrogens are on the same side of the hydrocarbon chain. In the *trans* configuration, the hydrogens are on opposite sides. A *cis* double bond causes a kink in the chain.

Table 23.2.1 lists some common fatty acids. Chemists use a shorthand notation for fatty acids rather than the common name because they are all carboxylic acids with different numbers of carbons and **degree of unsaturation** (number of double bonds). This notation gives the number of carbons followed by the number of double bonds present. For example: palmitic acid, a 16 carbon saturated fatty acid, would be represented by C16:0 and palmitoleic acid, a 16 carbon monounsaturated fatty acid, would be C16:1.

Table 23.2.1: Some Common Fatty Acids Found in Natural Fats

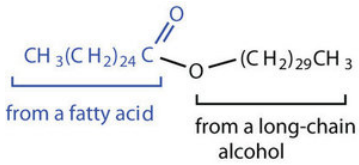
Name	Number of Carbons	Number of Double Bonds	Condensed Structural Formula	Melting Point (°C)	Shorthand Notation	Source
lauric acid	12	0	$CH_3(CH_2)_{10}COOH$	44	C12:0	palm kernel oil
myristic acid	14	0	$CH_3(CH_2)_{12}COOH$	58	C14:0	oil of nutmeg
palmitic acid	16	0	$CH_3(CH_2)_{14}COOH$	63	C16:0	palm oil

Name	Number of Carbons	Number of Double Bonds	Condensed Structural Formula	Melting Point (°C)	Shorthand Notation	Source
palmitoleic acid	16	1	$CH_3(CH_2)_5CH{=}CH(CH_2)_7COOH$	0.5	C16:1	macadamia oil
stearic acid	18	0	$CH_3(CH_2)_{16}COOH$	70	C18:0	cocoa butter
oleic acid	18	1	$CH_3(CH_2)_7CH{=}CH(CH_2)_7COOH$	16	C18:1	olive oil
linoleic acid	18	2	$CH_3(CH_2)_3(CH_2CH{=}CH)_2(CH_2)_7COOH$	−5	C18:2	canola oil
α-linolenic acid	18	3	$CH_3(CH_2CH{=}CH)_3(CH_2)_7COOH$	−11	C18:3	flaxseed
arachidonic acid	20	4	$CH_3(CH_2)_4(CH_2CH{=}CH)_4(CH_2)_2COOH$	−50	C20:4	liver

Two polyunsaturated fatty acids—linoleic and α-linolenic acids—are termed essential fatty acids because humans must obtain them from their diets. Both substances are required for normal growth and development, but the human body does not synthesize them. The body uses linoleic acid to synthesize many of the other unsaturated fatty acids, such as arachidonic acid, a precursor for the synthesis of prostaglandins. In addition, the essential fatty acids are necessary for the efficient transport and metabolism of cholesterol. The average daily diet should contain about 4–6 g of the essential fatty acids.

Waxes

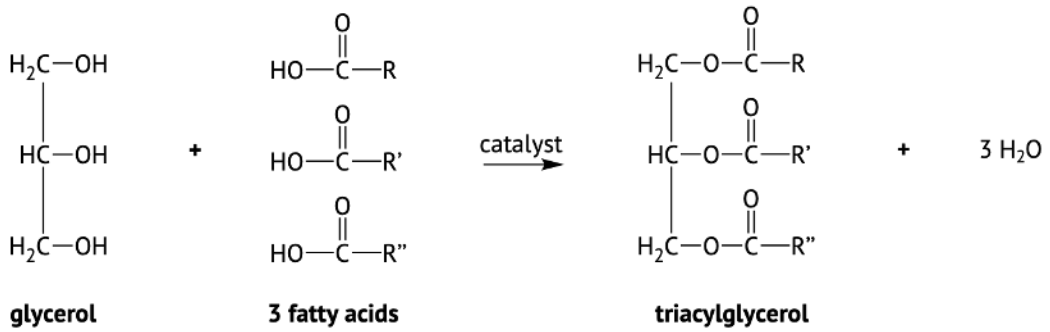
Waxes are esters formed from long-chain fatty acids and long-chain alcohols. Most natural waxes are mixtures of such esters. Plant waxes on the surfaces of leaves, stems, flowers, and fruits protect the plant from dehydration and invasion by harmful microorganisms. Carnauba wax, used extensively in floor waxes, automobile waxes, and furniture polish, is largely myricyl cerotate, obtained from the leaves of certain Brazilian palm trees. Animals also produce waxes that serve as protective coatings, keeping the surfaces of feathers, skin, and hair pliable and water repellent. In fact, if the waxy coating on the feathers of a water bird is dissolved as a result of the bird swimming in an oil slick, the feathers become wet and heavy, and the bird, unable to maintain its buoyancy, drowns.



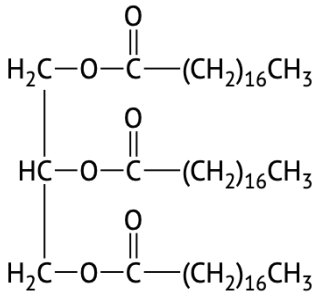
Myricyl cerotate
(found in carnauba wax)

Triacylglycerols

Animal fats and vegetable oils are called *triacylcylgerols* (or triglycerides) because they are esters composed of three fatty acid units joined to *glycerol*, a trihydroxy alcohol:

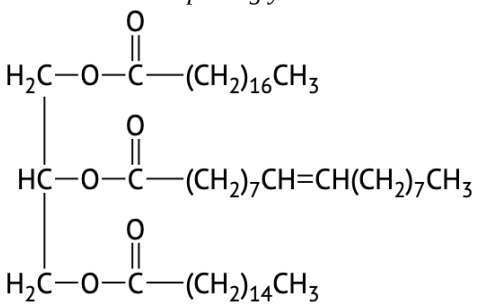


If all three OH groups on the glycerol molecule are esterified with the same fatty acid, the resulting ester is called a *simple triglyceride*. Although simple triglycerides have been synthesized in the laboratory, they rarely occur in nature. Instead, a typical triacylglycerols obtained from naturally occurring fats and oils contains two or three different fatty acid components and is thus termed a *mixed triglyceride*.



Tristearin

a simple triglyceride



a mixed triglyceride

A triacylglycerol is called a **fat** if it is a solid at 25 °C; it is called an **oil** if it is a liquid at that temperature. These differences in melting points reflect differences in the degree of unsaturation and number of carbon atoms in the constituent fatty acids. Triglycerides obtained from animal sources are usually solids, while those of plant origin are generally oils. Therefore, we commonly speak of animal fats and vegetable oils.

No single formula can be written to represent the naturally occurring fats and oils because they are highly complex mixtures of triglycerides in which many different fatty acids are represented. Table 23.2.2 shows the fatty acid compositions of some common fats and oils. The composition of any given fat or oil can vary depending on the plant or animal species it comes from as well as on dietetic and climatic factors. To cite just one example, lard from corn-fed hogs is more highly saturated than lard from peanut-fed hogs. Palmitic acid is the most abundant of the saturated fatty acids, while oleic acid is the most abundant unsaturated fatty acid.

Table 23.2.2: Average Fatty Acid Composition of Some Common Fats and Oils (%)*

Source	Lauric (C12:0)	Myristic (C14:0)	Palmitic (C16:0)	Stearic (C18:0)	Oleic (C18:1)	Linoleic (C18:2)	Linolenic (C18:3)

*Totals less than 100% indicate the presence of fatty acids with fewer than 12 carbon atoms or more than 18 carbon atoms.

†Coconut oil is highly saturated. It contains an unusually high percentage of the low-melting C_8, C_{10}, and C_{12} saturated fatty acids.

Source	Lauric (C12:0)	Myristic (C14:0)	Palmitic (C16:0)	Stearic (C18:0)	Oleic (C18:1)	Linoleic (C18:2)	Linolenic (C18:3)
Fats							
butter (cow)	3	11	27	12	29	2	1
tallow		3	24	19	43	3	1
lard		2	26	14	44	10	
Oils							
canola oil			4	2	62	22	10
coconut oil†	47	18	9	3	6	2	
corn oil			11	2	28	58	1
olive oil			13	3	71	10	1
peanut oil			11	2	48	32	
soybean oil			11	4	24	54	7

*Totals less than 100% indicate the presence of fatty acids with fewer than 12 carbon atoms or more than 18 carbon atoms.

†Coconut oil is highly saturated. It contains an unusually high percentage of the low-melting C_8, C_{10}, and C_{12} saturated fatty acids.

Terms such as *saturated fat* or *unsaturated oil* are often used to describe the fats or oils obtained from foods. Saturated fats contain a high proportion of saturated fatty acids, while unsaturated oils contain a high proportion of unsaturated fatty acids. The high consumption of saturated fats is a factor, along with the high consumption of cholesterol, in increased risks of heart disease.

23.2: Fatty Acids and Their Esters is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **17.1: Fatty Acids** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **17.2: Fats and Oils** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

23.3: Properties of Fats and Oils

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

23.3: Properties of Fats and Oils is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

23.4: Chemical Reactions of Triacylglycerols

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

23.4: Chemical Reactions of Triacylglycerols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

23.5: Phospholipids and Glycolipids

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

23.5: Phospholipids and Glycolipids is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

23.6: Sterols

Learning Objectives

- To identify the functions of steroids produced in mammals.

All the lipids discussed so far are *saponifiable*, reacting with aqueous alkali to yield simpler components, such as glycerol, fatty acids, amino alcohols, and sugars. Lipid samples extracted from cellular material, however, also contain a small but important fraction that does not react with alkali. The most important nonsaponifiable lipids are the **steroids**. These compounds include the *bile salts*, *cholesterol* and related compounds, and certain *hormones* (such as cortisone and the sex hormones).

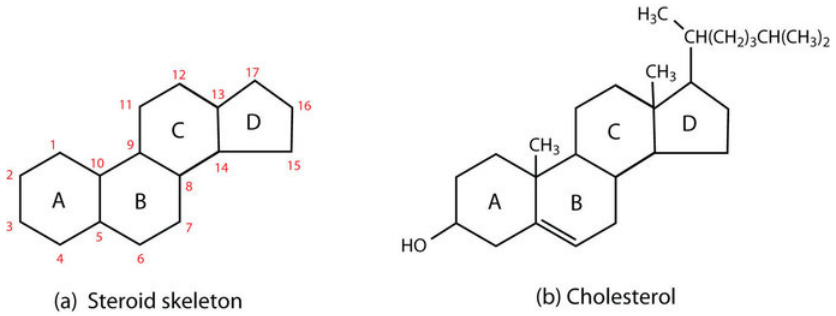


Figure 23.6.1 Steroids. (a) The four-fused-ring steroid skeleton uses letter designations for each ring and the numbering of the carbon atoms. (b) The cholesterol molecule follows this pattern.

Steroids occur in plants, animals, yeasts, and molds but not in bacteria. They may exist in free form or combined with fatty acids or carbohydrates. All steroids have a characteristic structural component consisting of four fused rings. Chemists identify the rings by capital letters and number the carbon atoms as shown in Figure 23.6.1*a*. Slight variations in this structure or in the atoms or groups attached to it produce profound differences in biological activity.

Cholesterol

Cholesterol (Figure 23.6.1*b*) does not occur in plants, but it is the most abundant steroid in the human body (240 g is a typical amount). Excess cholesterol is believed to be a primary factor in the development of atherosclerosis and heart disease, which are major health problems in the United States today. About half of the body's cholesterol is interspersed in the lipid bilayer of cell membranes. Much of the rest is converted to cholic acid, which is used in the formation of bile salts. Cholesterol is also a precursor in the synthesis of sex hormones, adrenal hormones, and vitamin D.

Excess cholesterol not metabolized by the body is released from the liver and transported by the blood to the gallbladder. Normally, it stays in solution there until being secreted into the intestine (as a component of bile) to be eliminated. Sometimes, however, cholesterol in the gallbladder precipitates in the form of gallstones (Figure 23.6.2). Indeed, the name *cholesterol* is derived from the Greek *chole*, meaning "bile," and *stereos*, meaning "solid."

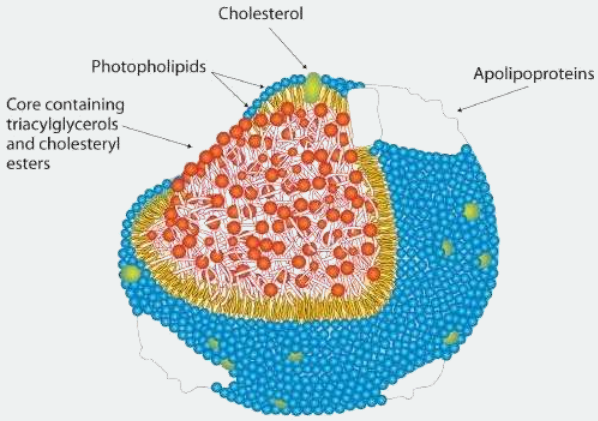
Figure 23.6.2: Numerous small gallstones made up largely of cholesterol, all removed in one patient. Grid scale 1 mm

To Your Health: Cholesterol and Heart Disease

Heart disease is the leading cause of death in the United States for both men and women. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention reported that heart disease claimed 631,636 lives in the United States (26% of all reported deaths) in 2006.

Scientists agree that elevated cholesterol levels in the blood, as well as high blood pressure, obesity, diabetes, and cigarette smoking, are associated with an increased risk of heart disease. A long-term investigation by the National Institutes of Health showed that among men ages 30 to 49, the incidence of heart disease was five times greater for those whose cholesterol levels were above 260 mg/100 mL of serum than for those with cholesterol levels of 200 mg/100 mL or less. The cholesterol content of blood varies considerably with age, diet, and sex. Young adults average about 170 mg of cholesterol per 100 mL of blood, whereas males at age 55 may have cholesterol levels at 250 mg/100 mL or higher because the rate of cholesterol breakdown decreases with age. Females tend to have lower blood cholesterol levels than males.

To understand the link between heart disease and cholesterol levels, it is important to understand how cholesterol and other lipids are transported in the body. Lipids, such as cholesterol, are not soluble in water and therefore cannot be transported in the blood (an aqueous medium) unless they are complexed with proteins that are soluble in water, forming assemblages called *lipoproteins*. Lipoproteins are classified according to their density, which is dependent on the relative amounts of protein and lipid they contain. Lipids are less dense than proteins, so lipoproteins containing a greater proportion of lipid are less dense than those containing a greater proportion of protein.



Research on cholesterol and its role in heart disease has focused on serum levels of low-density lipoproteins (LDLs) and high-density lipoproteins (HDLs). One of the most fascinating discoveries is that high levels of HDLs reduce a person's risk of developing heart disease, whereas high levels of LDLs increase that risk. Thus the serum LDL:HDL ratio is a better predictor of heart disease risk than the overall level of serum cholesterol. Persons who, because of hereditary or dietary factors, have high LDL:HDL ratios in their blood have a higher incidence of heart disease.

How do HDLs reduce the risk of developing heart disease? No one knows for sure, but one role of HDLs appears to be the transport of excess cholesterol to the liver, where it can be metabolized. Therefore, HDLs aid in removing cholesterol from blood and from the smooth muscle cells of the arterial wall.

Dietary modifications and increased physical activity can help lower total cholesterol and improve the LDL:HDL ratio. The average American consumes about 600 mg of cholesterol from animal products each day and also synthesizes approximately 1 g of cholesterol each day, mostly in the liver. The amount of cholesterol synthesized is controlled by the cholesterol level in the blood; when the blood cholesterol level exceeds 150 mg/100 mL, the rate of cholesterol biosynthesis is halved. Hence, if cholesterol is present in the diet, a feedback mechanism suppresses its synthesis in the liver. However, the ratio of suppression is not a 1:1 ratio; the reduction in biosynthesis does not equal the amount of cholesterol ingested. Thus, dietary substitutions of unsaturated fat for saturated fat, as well as a reduction in consumption of *trans* fatty acids, is recommended to help lower serum cholesterol and the risk of heart disease.

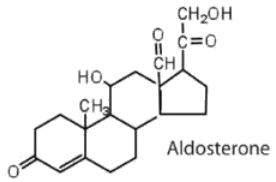
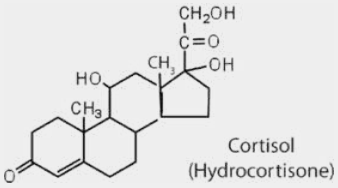
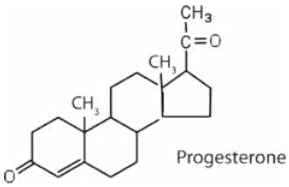
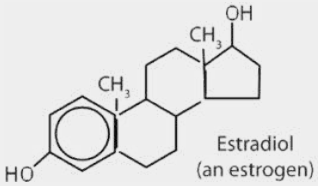
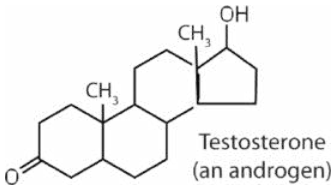
Steroid Hormones

Hormones are chemical messengers that are released in one tissue and transported through the circulatory system to one or more other tissues. One group of hormones is known as steroid hormones because these hormones are synthesized from cholesterol, which is also a steroid. There are two main groups of steroid hormones: adrenocortical hormones and sex hormones.

The adrenocortical hormones, such as aldosterone and cortisol (Table 23.6.1), are produced by the adrenal gland, which is located adjacent to each kidney. Aldosterone acts on most cells in the body, but it is particularly effective at enhancing the rate of reabsorption of sodium ions in the kidney tubules and increasing the secretion of potassium ions and/or hydrogen ions by the

tubules. Because the concentration of sodium ions is the major factor influencing water retention in tissues, aldosterone promotes water retention and reduces urine output. Cortisol regulates several key metabolic reactions (for example, increasing glucose production and mobilizing fatty acids and amino acids). It also inhibits the inflammatory response of tissue to injury or stress. Cortisol and its analogs are therefore used pharmacologically as immunosuppressants after transplant operations and in the treatment of severe skin allergies and autoimmune diseases, such as rheumatoid arthritis.

Table 23.6.1: Representative Steroid Hormones and Their Physiological Effects

Hormone	Effect
	regulates salt metabolism; stimulates kidneys to retain sodium and excrete potassium
	stimulates the conversion of proteins to carbohydrates
	regulates the menstrual cycle; maintains pregnancy
	stimulates female sex characteristics; regulates changes during the menstrual cycle
	stimulates and maintains male sex characteristics

The sex hormones are a class of steroid hormones secreted by the gonads (ovaries or testes), the placenta, and the adrenal glands. Testosterone and androstenedione are the primary male sex hormones, or *androgens*, controlling the primary sexual characteristics of males, or the development of the male genital organs and the continuous production of sperm. Androgens are also responsible for the development of secondary male characteristics, such as facial hair, deep voice, and muscle strength. Two kinds of sex hormones are of particular importance in females: progesterone, which prepares the uterus for pregnancy and prevents the further release of eggs from the ovaries during pregnancy, and the estrogens, which are mainly responsible for the development of female secondary sexual characteristics, such as breast development and increased deposition of fat tissue in the breasts, the buttocks, and the thighs. Both males and females produce androgens and estrogens, differing in the amounts of secreted hormones rather than in the presence or absence of one or the other.

Sex hormones, both natural and synthetic, are sometimes used therapeutically. For example, a woman who has had her ovaries removed may be given female hormones to compensate. Some of the earliest chemical compounds employed in cancer chemotherapy were sex hormones. For example, estrogens are one treatment option for prostate cancer because they block the release and activity of testosterone. Testosterone enhances prostate cancer growth. Sex hormones are also administered in

preparation for sex-change operations, to promote the development of the proper secondary sexual characteristics. Oral contraceptives are synthetic derivatives of the female sex hormones; they work by preventing ovulation.

Bile Salts

Bile is a yellowish green liquid (pH 7.8–8.6) produced in the liver. The most important constituents of bile are bile salts, which are sodium salts of amidelike combinations of bile acids, such as cholic acid (part (a) of Figure 23.6.3) and an amine such as the amino acid glycine (part (b) of Figure 23.6.3). They are synthesized from cholesterol in the liver, stored in the gallbladder, and then secreted in bile into the small intestine. In the gallbladder, the composition of bile gradually changes as water is absorbed and the other components become more concentrated.

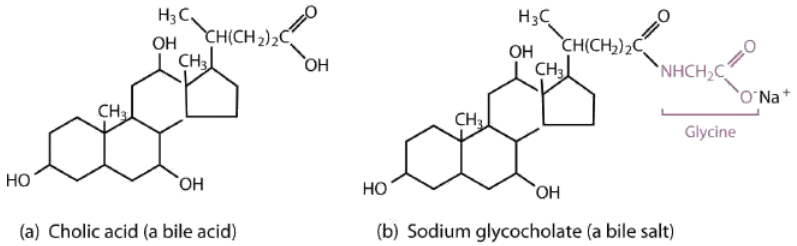


Figure 23.6.3 Bile Acids. (a) Cholic acid is an example of a bile acid. (b) Sodium glycocholate is a bile salt synthesized from cholic acid and glycine.

Because they contain both hydrophobic and hydrophilic groups, bile salts are highly effective detergents and emulsifying agents; they break down large fat globules into smaller ones and keep those smaller globules suspended in the aqueous digestive environment. Enzymes can then hydrolyze fat molecules more efficiently. Thus, the major function of bile salts is to aid in the digestion of dietary lipids.

> Surgical removal is often advised for a gallbladder that becomes infected, inflamed, or perforated. This surgery does not seriously affect digestion because bile is still produced by the liver, but the liver's bile is more dilute and its secretion into the small intestine is not as closely tied to the arrival of food.

Summary

Steroids have a four-fused-ring structure and have a variety of functions. Cholesterol is a steroid found in mammals that is needed for the formation of cell membranes, bile acids, and several hormones. Bile salts are secreted into the small intestine to aid in the digestion of fats.

23.6: Sterols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **17.4: Steroids** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

23.7: Structure of Cell Membranes

Learning Objectives

- Identify the distinguishing characteristics of membrane lipids.
- Describe membrane components and how they are arranged.

All living cells are surrounded by a cell membrane. Plant cells (Figure 23.7.1*A*) and animal cells (Figure 23.7.1*B*) contain a cell nucleus that is also surrounded by a membrane and holds the genetic information for the cell. Everything between the cell membrane and the nuclear membrane—including intracellular fluids and various subcellular components such as the mitochondria and ribosomes—is called the cytoplasm. The membranes of all cells have a fundamentally similar structure, but membrane function varies tremendously from one organism to another and even from one cell to another within a single organism. This diversity arises mainly from the presence of different proteins and lipids in the membrane.

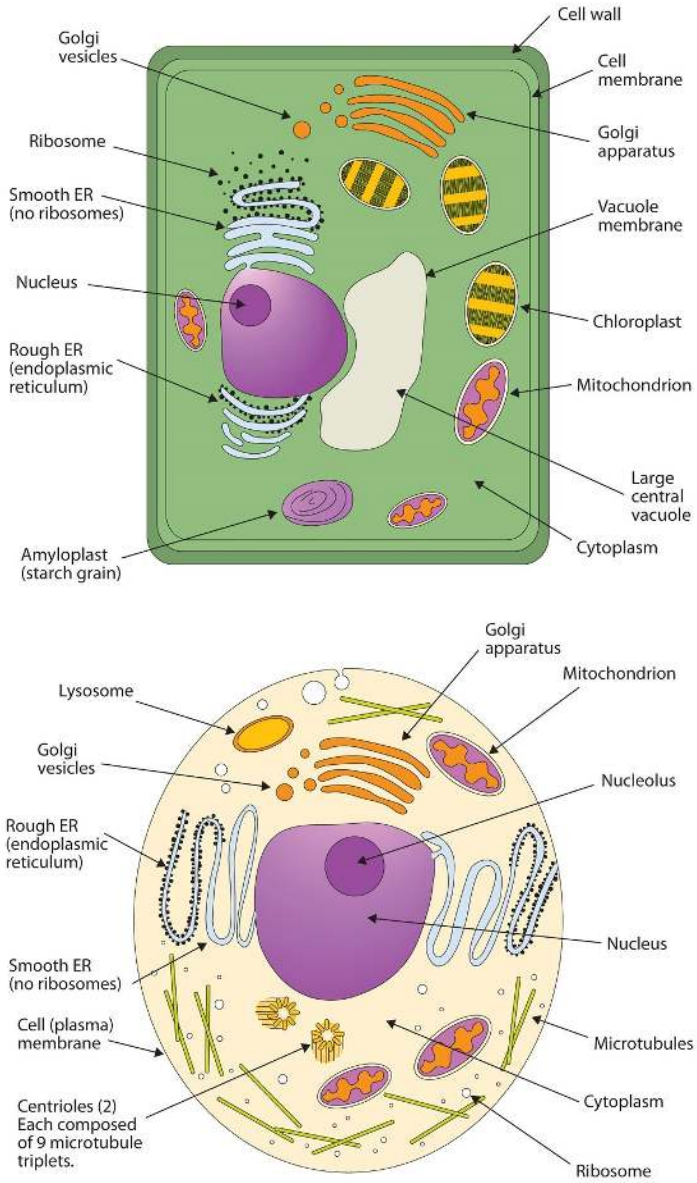


Figure 23.7.1: (A) An Idealized Plant Cell. Not all the structures shown here occur in every type of plant cell. (B) An Idealized Animal Cell. The structures shown here will seldom all be found in a single animal cell.

The lipids in cell membranes are highly polar but have dual characteristics: part of the lipid is ionic and therefore dissolves in water, whereas the rest has a hydrocarbon structure and therefore dissolves in nonpolar substances. Often, the ionic part is referred to as hydrophilic, meaning “water loving,” and the nonpolar part as hydrophobic, meaning “water fearing” (repelled by water). Molecules that have both polar and nonpolar parts are called **amphipathic**. When allowed to float freely in water, lipids spontaneously cluster together in different arrangements: micelles, liposomes, monolayers, or bilayers (Figure 23.7.2).

Figure 23.7.2: Aggregation of Membrane Lipids. In polar solvents like water, amphipathic lipids will aggregate the polar heads and nonpolar tails forming monolayers, bilayers, micelles, and liposomes.

Micelles are aggregations in which the lipids’ hydrocarbon tails—being hydrophobic—are directed toward the center of the assemblage and away from the surrounding water while the hydrophilic heads are directed outward, in contact with the water. Each micelle may contain thousands of lipid molecules. Polar lipids may also form a monolayer, a layer one molecule thick on the surface of the water. The polar heads face into water, and the nonpolar tails stick up into the air. Bilayers are double layers of lipids arranged so that the hydrophobic tails are sandwiched between an inner surface and an outer surface consisting of hydrophilic heads. The hydrophilic heads are in contact with water on either side of the bilayer, whereas the tails, sequestered inside the bilayer, are prevented from having contact with the water. Bilayers like this make up every cell membrane (Figure 23.7.3).

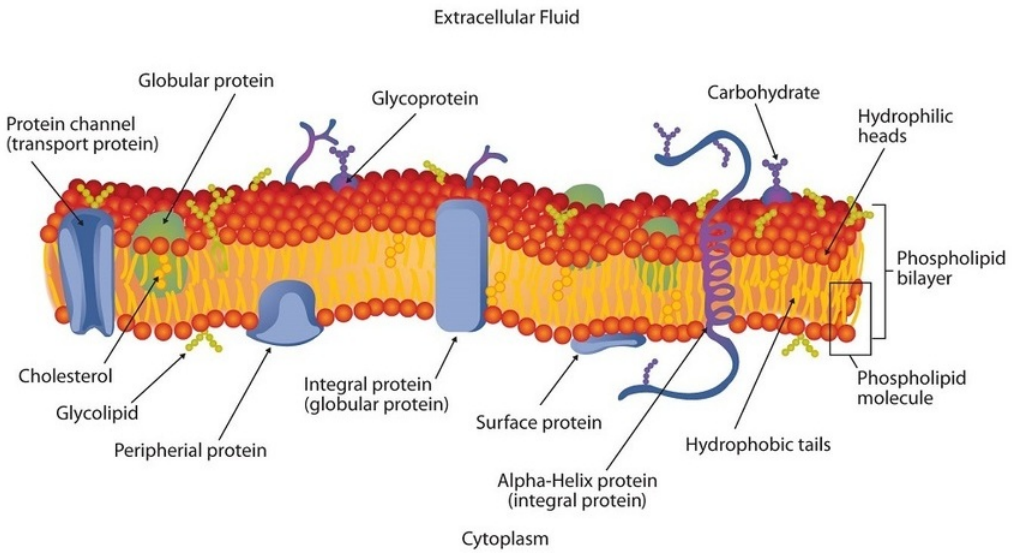


Figure 23.7.3: Schematic Diagram of a Cell Membrane. The membrane enclosing a typical animal cell is a phospholipid bilayer with embedded cholesterol and protein molecules. Short oligosaccharide chains are attached to the outer surface.

In the bilayer interior, the hydrophobic tails (that is, the fatty acid portions of lipid molecules) interact by means of dispersion forces. The interactions are weakened by the presence of unsaturated fatty acids. As a result, the membrane components are free to mill about to some extent, and the membrane is described as fluid.

Membrane Proteins

If membranes were composed only of lipids, very few ions or polar molecules could pass through their hydrophobic "sandwich filling" to enter or leave any cell. However, certain charged and polar species do cross the membrane, aided by proteins that move about in the lipid bilayer. The two major classes of proteins in the cell membrane are integral proteins, which span the hydrophobic interior of the bilayer, and peripheral proteins, which are more loosely associated with the surface of the lipid bilayer (Figure 23.7.3). Peripheral proteins may be attached to integral proteins, to the polar head groups of phospholipids, or to both by hydrogen bonding and electrostatic forces.

Transport Across Cell Membranes

Plasma membranes must allow certain substances to enter and leave a cell, and prevent some harmful materials from entering and some essential materials from leaving. In other words, plasma membranes are **selectively permeable**—they allow some substances to pass through, but not others. If they were to lose this selectivity, the cell would no longer be able to sustain itself, and it would be destroyed. Some cells require larger amounts of specific substances than do other cells; they must have a way of obtaining these materials from extracellular fluids. This may happen passively, as certain materials move back and forth, or the cell may have special mechanisms that facilitate transport. Some materials are so important to a cell that it spends some of its energy, hydrolyzing adenosine triphosphate (ATP), to obtain these materials. Red blood cells use some of their energy doing just that. All cells spend the majority of their energy to maintain an imbalance of sodium and potassium ions between the interior and exterior of the cell.

There are two primary modes of transport across membranes. **Passive transport** is a naturally occurring phenomenon and does not require the cell to exert any of its energy to accomplish the movement. In passive transport, substances move from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration. **Active transport** mechanisms require the use of the cell's energy, usually in the form of adenosine triphosphate (ATP). If a substance must move into the cell against its concentration gradient—that is, if the concentration of the substance inside the cell is greater than its concentration in the extracellular fluid (and vice versa)—the cell must use energy to move the substance.

File:Passive vs Active Membrane Transport.svg

23.7: Structure of Cell Membranes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **17.3: Membranes and Membrane Lipids** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

23.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes

23.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

23.9: Eicosanoids- Prostaglandins and Leukotrienes

23.9: Eicosanoids- Prostaglandins and Leukotrienes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

24: Lipid Metabolism

24.1: Digestion of Triacylglycerols
24.2: Lipoproteins for Lipid Transport
24.3: Triacylglycerol Metabolism - An Overview
24.4: Storage and Mobilization of Triacylglycerols
24.5: Oxidation of Fatty Acids
24.6: Energy from Fatty Acid Oxidation
24.7: Ketone Bodies and Ketoacidosis
24.8: Biosynthesis of Fatty Acids

24: Lipid Metabolism is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

24.1: Digestion of Triacylglycerols

Learning Objectives

- Describe the process of digestion of lipids and their transport into the bloodstream.

Lipid digestion begins in the upper portion of the small intestine. A hormone secreted in this region stimulates the gallbladder to discharge bile into the duodenum. The principal constituents of **bile** are the bile salts, which emulsify large, water-insoluble lipid droplets, disrupting some of the hydrophobic interactions holding the lipid molecules together and suspending the resulting smaller globules (micelles) in the aqueous digestive medium. These changes greatly increase the surface area of the lipid particles, allowing for more intimate contact with the lipases and thus rapid digestion of the fats. Another hormone promotes the secretion of pancreatic juice, which contains these enzymes.

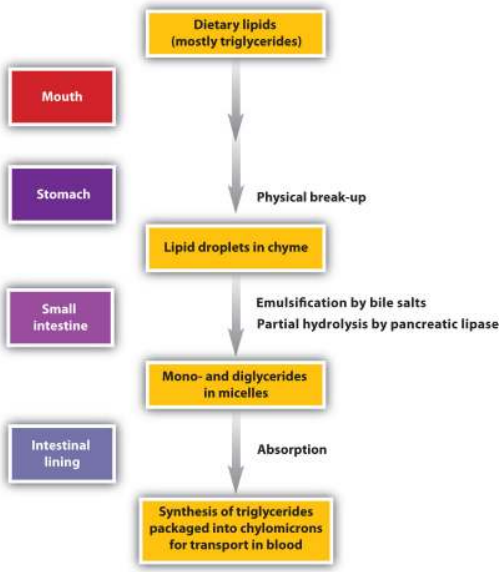


Figure 24.1.1: The Principal Events and Sites of Lipid (Primarily Triglyceride) Digestion

The lipases in pancreatic juice catalyze the digestion of triglycerides first to diglycerides and then to 2-monoglycerides and fatty acids:

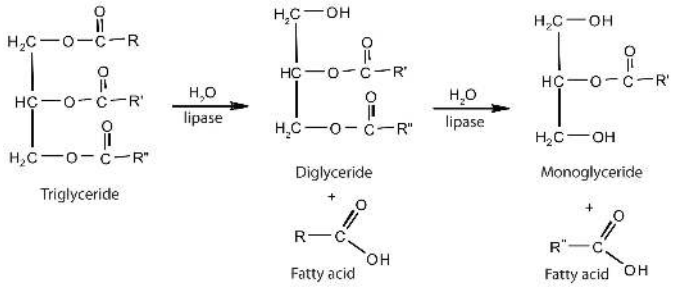


Figure 24.1.2: Digestion of triglycerides.

The large and hydrophobic long-chain fatty acids and monoacylglycerides are not so easily suspended in the watery intestinal chyme. However, bile salts and lecithin resolve this issue by enclosing them in a **micelle**, which is a tiny sphere with polar (hydrophilic) ends facing the watery environment and hydrophobic tails turned to the interior, creating a receptive environment for the long-chain fatty acids. The core also includes cholesterol and fat-soluble vitamins. Without micelles, lipids would sit on the surface of chyme and never come in contact with the absorptive surfaces of the epithelial cells. Micelles can easily squeeze between microvilli and get very near the luminal cell surface. At this point, lipid substances exit the micelle and are absorbed via simple diffusion.

The free fatty acids and monoacylglycerides that enter the epithelial cells are reincorporated into triglycerides. The triglycerides are mixed with phospholipids and cholesterol, and surrounded with a protein coat. This new complex, called a **chylomicron**, (see Figure 24.1.3), is a water-soluble lipoprotein.

File:2512 Chylomicrons Contain Triglycerides Cholesterol Molecules and Other Lipids.jpg

Figure 24.1.3: Lipoproteins (chylomicrons) package triacylglycrols and cholesterol for transport to cells.

After being processed by the Golgi apparatus, chylomicrons are released from the cell. Too big to pass through the basement membranes of blood capillaries, chylomicrons instead enter the large pores of lacteals. The lacteals come together to form the lymphatic vessels. The chylomicrons are transported in the lymphatic vessels and empty through the thoracic duct into the circulatory system (Figure 24.1.4).

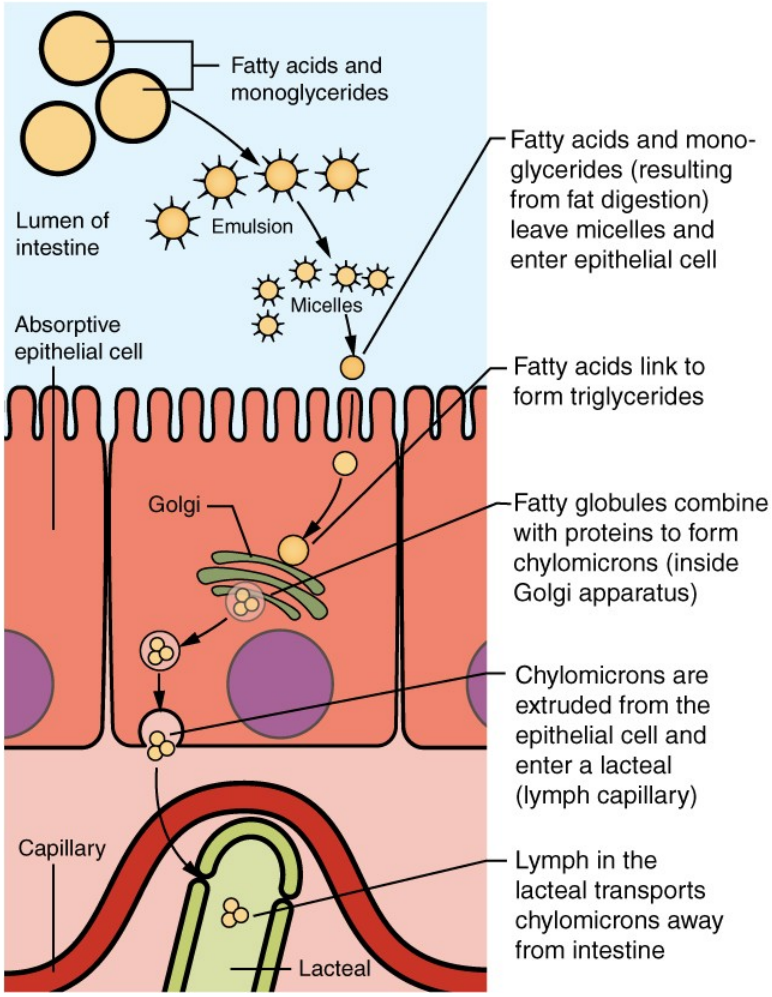


Figure 24.1.4: Pathways of Lipids

24.1: Digestion of Triacylglycerols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

24.2: Lipoproteins for Lipid Transport

Learning Objectives

- Describe the difference in composition and function between the five classes of lipoproteins.

During times of feasting, lipids enter the body's metabolic pathways through the process of digestion. Any excess energy will be stored in adipose tissues. If food has not been eaten for a while, fasting, lipids mobilized from stored adipose tissue and synthesized in the liver can be used for energy. Transportation of nonpolar lipids through the bloodstream requires binding to water-soluble proteins like serum albumin or packaging in lipoproteins. There are five categories of lipoprotein defined by their composition and density, or the ratio of lipid to protein. Chylomicrons, which have the highest lipid to protein ratio, have the lowest-density, are responsible for transporting lipids from digestion into the blood and eventually to the liver. Following is a list of the remaining four lipoproteins and their functions:

- *Very low-density lipoproteins (VLDLs)* (0.96-1.006 g/cm^3) are made in the liver from remnants of chylomicrons and transport triglycerides from the liver to various tissues in the body for energy or storage. As the VLDLs travel through the circulatory system, the lipoprotein lipase strips the VLDL of triglycerides. As triglyceride removal persists, the VLDLs become intermediate-density lipoproteins.
- *Intermediate-density lipoproteins (IDLs)* (1.007-1.019 g/cm^3) transport a variety of fats and cholesterol left from VLDLs from the tissues to the liver where they are transformed into low-density lipoprotein.
- *Low-density lipoproteins (LDLs)* (1.020-1.062 g/cm^3) carry cholesterol and other lipids from the liver to tissue throughout the body. LDLs are comprised of very small amounts of triglycerides, and house over 50 percent cholesterol and cholesterol esters. Once inside the cell, the LDL is taken apart and its cholesterol is released and used for membrane formation, steroid synthesis, or if in excess forming arterial plaques.
- *High-density lipoproteins (HDLs)* (1.063-1.210 g/cm^3) are responsible for carrying cholesterol out of the bloodstream and into the liver, where it is either reused or removed from the body with bile.

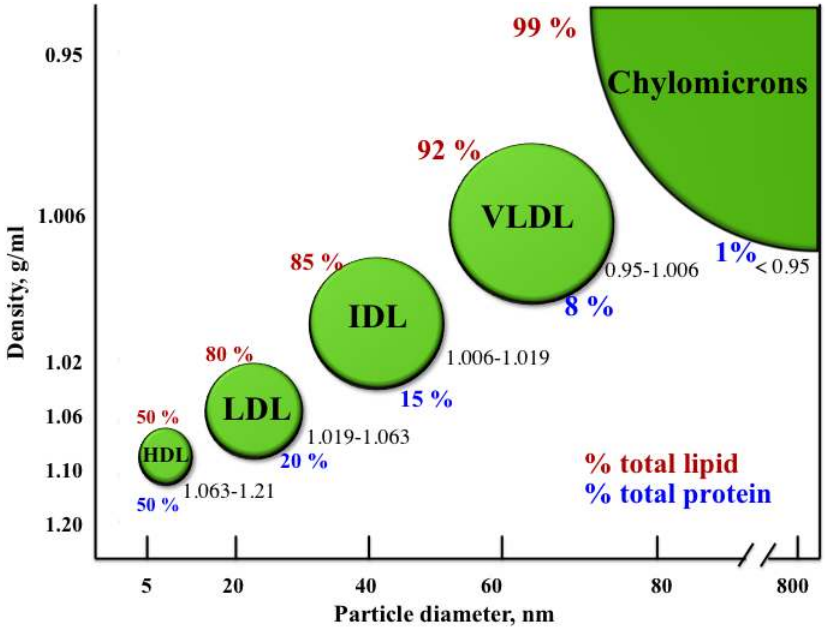


Figure 24.2.1: Lipoprotein Classes The classification of the major types of lipoproteins are based on their densities. Density range is shown as well as lipid (red) and protein (blue) content. (Diagram not to scale) / CC BY 3.0

Note To Your Health: Good vs. Bad Cholesterol

You are probably familiar with HDL and LDL being referred to as "good cholesterol" and "bad cholesterol," respectively. This is an oversimplification to help the public interpret their blood lipid values, because cholesterol is cholesterol; it's not good or bad. LDL and HDL are lipoproteins, and as a result you can't consume good or bad cholesterol, you consume cholesterol. A

more appropriate descriptor for these lipoproteins would be HDL "good cholesterol transporter" and LDL "bad cholesterol transporter."

For healthy total blood cholesterol, the desired range you would want to maintain is under 200 mg/dL. More specifically, when looking at individual lipid profiles, a low amount of LDL and a high amount of HDL prevents excess buildup of cholesterol in the arteries and wards off potential health hazards. An LDL level of less than 100 milligrams per deciliter is ideal while an LDL level above 160 mg/dL would be considered high. In contrast, a low value of HDL is a telltale sign that a person is living with major risks for disease. Values of less than 40 mg/dL for men and 50 mg/dL for women mark a risk factor for developing heart disease. In short, elevated LDL blood lipid profiles indicate an increased risk of heart attack, while elevated HDL blood lipid profiles indicate a reduced risk.The University of Maryland Medical Center reports that omega-3 fatty acids promote lower total cholesterol and lower triglycerides in people with high cholesterol.[1]

It is suggested that people consume omega-3 fatty acids such as alpha-linolenic acid in their diets regularly. Polyunsaturated fatty acids are especially beneficial to consume because they both lower LDL and elevate HDL, thus contributing to healthy blood cholesterol levels. The study also reveals that saturated and trans fatty acids serve as catalysts for the increase of LDL cholesterol. Additionally, trans fatty acids decrease HDL levels, which can impact negatively on total blood cholesterol.

---

1. Omega-3 fatty acids. University of Maryland Medical Center. http://www.umm.edu/altmed/articles/omega-3-000316.htm. Updated August 5, 2015. Accessed September 28, 2017. ↵

24.2: Lipoproteins for Lipid Transport is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

24.3: Triacylglycerol Metabolism - An Overview

Learning Objectives

- Identify the main metabolic pathways of triacylglycerols.

In the body, triacylglycerols are essential for long-term energy storage as well as for insulation and protection. Triacylglycerols can be ingested directly or synthesized from extra dietary protein or carbohydrates. Figure 24.3.1 is a summary of the metabolic pathways of triacylglycerols that will be discussed in more detail in the following sections.

Dietary Triacylglycerols

Dietary triacylglycerols are transported through the bloodstream in chylomicrons. When a chylomicron encounters the enzyme **lipoprotein lipase**, triacylglycerols are broken down by hydrolysis into fatty acids and glycerol. These breakdown products then pass through capillary walls to be used for energy by cells or stored in adipose tissue as fat. Liver cells combine the remaining chylomicron remnants with proteins, forming lipoproteins that transport cholesterol in the blood.

Stored Triacylglycerols

When energy is needed, lipases in adipose tissue (fat cells) are activated to hydrolyze stored triacylglycerols into fatty acids and glycerol and release them into the bloodstream. Once the fatty acids reach their destination (muscle or liver cells) they are used to generate acetyl-CoA and eventually ATP.

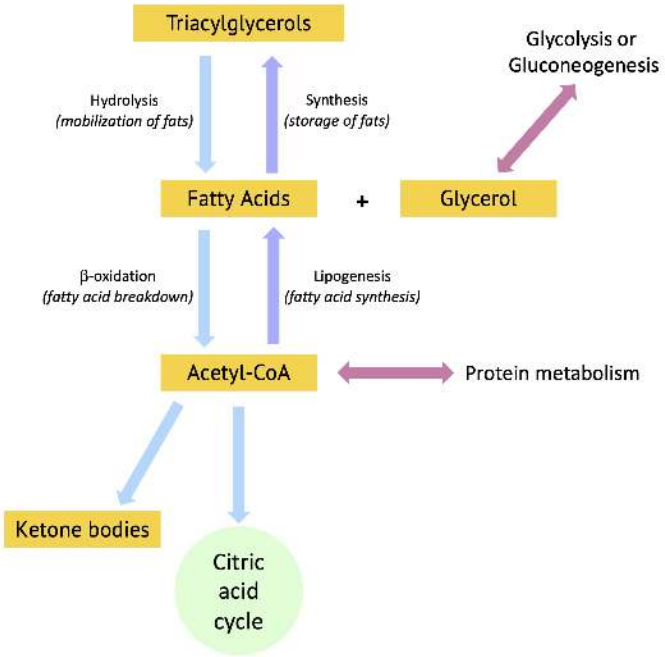


Figure 24.3.1: Overview of Triacylglycerol Metabolism

Glycerol from Triacylglycerols

The hydrolysis of triacylglycerols produce fatty acids, that are used for energy, and glycerol. The glycerol can be used to regenerate triacylglycerol or it can enter glycolysis or gluconeogenesis in the form dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP).

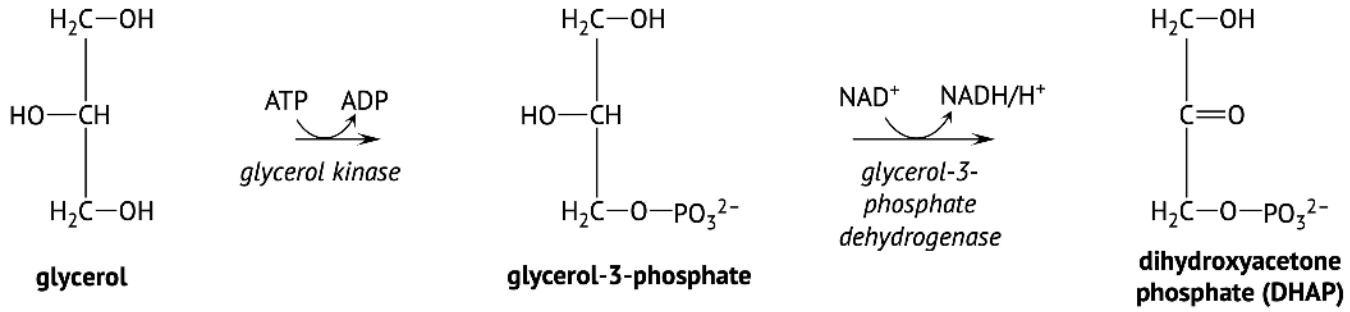


Figure 24.3.2: Conversion of Glycerol to DHAP: Lipid metabolism and carbohydrate metabolism are linked through glycerol and DHAP.

24.3: Triacylglycerol Metabolism - An Overview is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

24.4: Storage and Mobilization of Triacylglycerols

24.4: Storage and Mobilization of Triacylglycerols is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

24.5: Oxidation of Fatty Acids

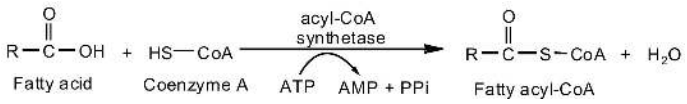
Learning Objectives

- Describe the steps of fatty acid oxidation.
- Calculate the yield of ATP from fatty acid oxidation.

Fatty acids released in the digestion of triglycerides and other lipids are broken down in a series of sequential reactions accompanied by the gradual release of usable energy.

Activation of Fatty Acids

Fatty acid oxidation is initiated in the cytosol. There the fatty acids, which like carbohydrates are relatively inert, must first be activated by conversion to an energy-rich fatty acid derivative of coenzyme A called *fatty acyl-coenzyme A* (CoA). The activation is catalyzed by *acyl-CoA synthetase*. For each molecule of fatty acid activated, one molecule of coenzyme A and one molecule of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) are used, equaling a net utilization of the two high-energy bonds in one ATP molecule (which is therefore converted to adenosine monophosphate [AMP] rather than adenosine diphosphate [ADP]):



Transport into the Mitochondrial Matrix

The fatty acyl-CoA cannot cross the membrane by diffusion and therefore must be transported into the mitochondrial matrix using a carrier molecule known as *carnitine*. At the outer mitochondrial membrane, fatty acyl-CoA is attached to the hydroxyl group of carnitine in a transesterification reaction catalyzed by carnitine acyltransferase I (also called carnitine palmitoyl transferase I, CPTI). The acyl-carnitine derivative is transported into the mitochondrial matrix by facilitated diffusion through a translocase protein (carnitine-acylcarnitine translocase). Once in the matrix, the acyl-carnitine is converted back to the fatty acyl-CoA and carnitine in a reaction catalyzed by carnitine acyltransferase II (also called carnitine palmitoyl transferase II, CPTI).

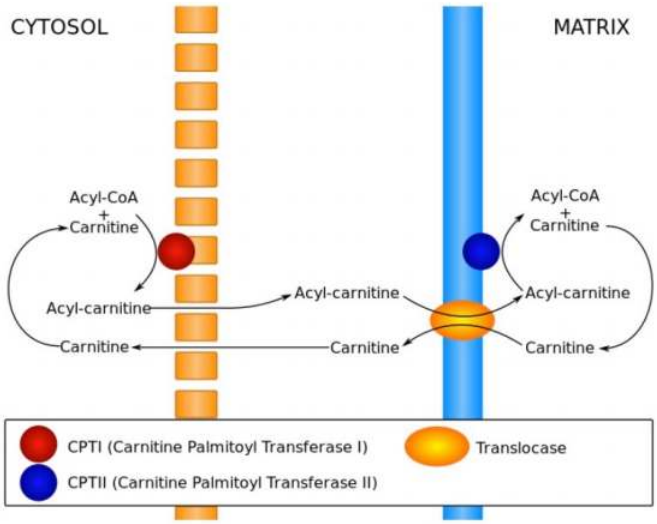


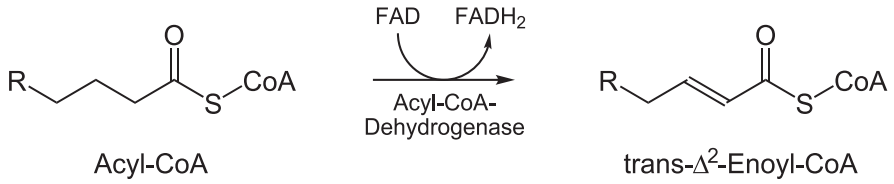
Figure 24.5.1: Movement of Acyl-CoAs into the Mitochondrial Matrix

Oxidation of Fatty Acyl-CoA

Once inside the mitochondria the fatty acyl-CoA can enter into beta-oxidation, which is a four-step cycle that removes carbons from the fatty acid two at a time to form acetyl-CoA (which eventually yields energy in the form of ATP).

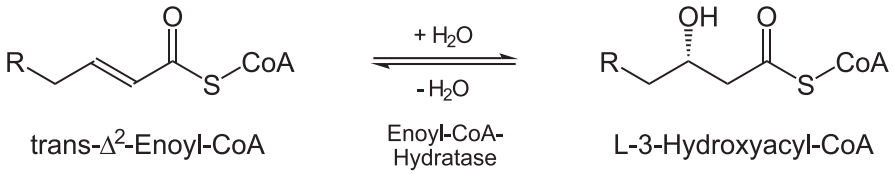
STEP 1: First β-oxidation (dehydrogenation of an alkane)

A fatty acyl-CoA is oxidized by the enzyme, *Acyl-CoA dehydrogenase*, to yield a trans double bond between the α- and β- carbons (the first and second carbons attached to the carbonyl group). The coenzyme FAD is reduced by accepting two hydrogen atoms and their electrons forming $FADH_2$, which moves into the electron transport chain.



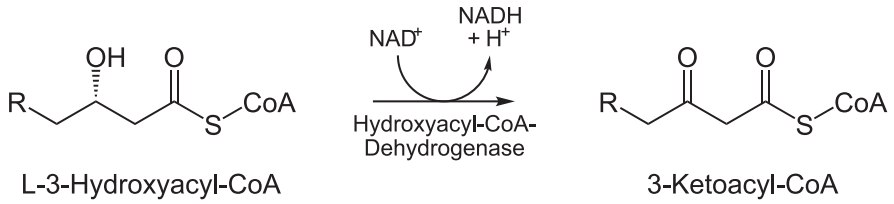
STEP 2: Hydration (addition of water across the double bond)

The trans alkene is then hydrated with the help of Enoyl-CoA hydratase. The hydroxyl group is placed on the β-carbon.



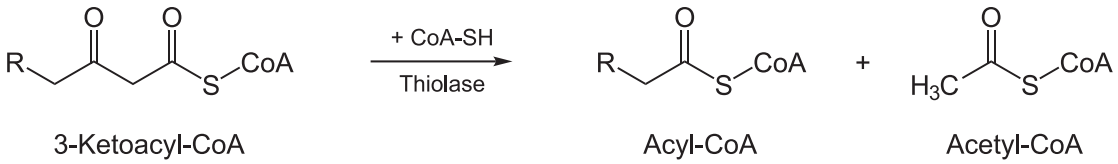
STEP 3: Second β-oxidation (oxidation of an alcohol)

The alcohol of the hydroxyacly-CoA is then oxidized to a carbonyl with the help of *β-hydroxyacyl-CoA dehydrogenase* and the coenzyme by NAD^+.



STEP 4: Thiolytic Cleavage

The enzyme *thiolase* (*acyl-CoA acetyltransferase*) cleaves off the acetyl-CoA and attaches a new coenzyme A to the chain to yield an acyl-CoA that is two carbons shorter than before. The acyl-CoA will continue through the cycle and start back at step 1. The cleaved acetyl-CoA can then enter into the the citric acid cycle and electron transport chain because it is already within the mitochondria.



Additional steps are required for unsaturated fatty acids and those with an even number of carbons. The amount of energy released by a fatty acid is determined by the amount of ATP produced from the acetyl-CoA entering the citric acid cycle and from the reduced coenzymes NADH and $FADH_2$ entering the electron transport chain.

ATP Yield from Fatty Acid Oxidation

The amount of ATP obtained from fatty acid oxidation depends on the size of the fatty acid being oxidized. For our purposes here. we'll study palmitic acid, a saturated fatty acid with 16 carbon atoms, as a typical fatty acid in the human diet. Calculating its energy yield provides a model for determining the ATP yield of all other fatty acids.

The breakdown of 1 mol of palmitic acid requires 1 mol of ATP (for activation) and forms 8 mol of acetyl-CoA. Recall from that each mole of acetyl-CoA metabolized by the citric acid cycle yields 10 mol of ATP. The complete degradation of 1 mol of palmitic acid requires the β-oxidation reactions to be repeated seven times. Thus, 7 mol of NADH and 7 mol of $FADH_2$ are produced. Reoxidation of these coenzymes through respiration yields 2.5–3 and 1.5–2 mol of ATP, respectively. The energy calculations can be summarized as follows:

1 mol of ATP is split to AMP and $2P_i$	−2 ATP
8 mol of acetyl-CoA formed (8 × 12)	96 ATP
7 mol of $FADH_2$ formed (7 × 2)	14 ATP
7 mol of NADH formed (7 × 3)	21 ATP
Total	129 ATP

> *The number of times β-oxidation is repeated for a fatty acid containing n carbon atoms is n/2 – 1 because the final turn yields two acetyl-CoA molecules.*

The combustion of 1 mol of palmitic acid releases a considerable amount of energy:

$$C_{16}H_{32}O_2 + 23O_2 \rightarrow 16CO_2 + 16H_2O + 2,340\ kcal$$

The percentage of this energy that is conserved by the cell in the form of ATP is as follows:

$$\frac{\text{energy conserved}}{\text{total energy available}} \times 100 = \frac{(129\ \text{ATP})(7.4\ \text{kcal/ATP})}{2,340\ \text{kcal}} \times 100 = 41\%$$

The efficiency of fatty acid metabolism is comparable to that of carbohydrate metabolism, which we calculated to be 42%.

> *The oxidation of fatty acids produces large quantities of water. This water, which sustains migratory birds and animals (such as the camel) for long periods of time.*

24.5: Oxidation of Fatty Acids is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **20.3: Overview of Stage II of Catabolism** by Darik Benson is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **6.11: Fatty Acid Oxidation** by Kevin Ahern & Indira Rajagopal is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://biochem.oregonstate.edu/undergraduate/educational-resources.
- **20.6: Stage II of Lipid Catabolism** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

24.6: Energy from Fatty Acid Oxidation

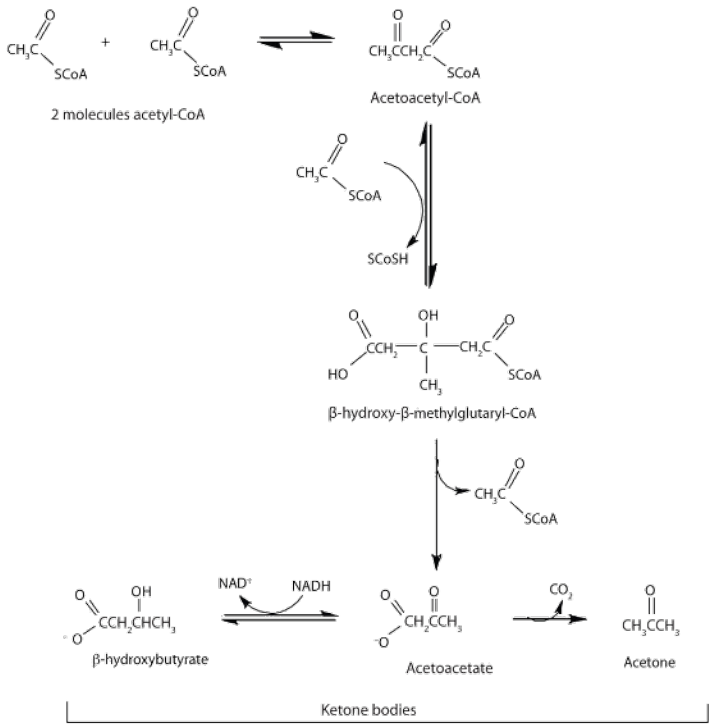
24.6: Energy from Fatty Acid Oxidation is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

24.7: Ketone Bodies and Ketoacidosis

Learning Objectives

- Describe the structure and function of ketone bodies.

In the liver, most of the acetyl-CoA obtained from fatty acid oxidation is oxidized by the citric acid cycle. However, some of the acetyl-CoA is used to synthesize a group of compounds known as *ketone bodies*: acetoacetate, β-hydroxybutyrate, and acetone. Two acetyl-CoA molecules combine, in a reversal of the final step of β-oxidation, to produce acetoacetyl-CoA. The acetoacetyl-CoA reacts with another molecule of acetyl-CoA and water to form β-hydroxy-β-methylglutaryl-CoA, which is then cleaved to acetoacetate and acetyl-CoA. Most of the acetoacetate is reduced to β-hydroxybutyrate, while a small amount is decarboxylated to carbon dioxide and acetone.



The acetoacetate and β-hydroxybutyrate synthesized by the liver are released into the blood for use as a metabolic fuel (to be converted back to acetyl-CoA) by other tissues, particularly the kidney and the heart. Thus, during prolonged starvation, ketone bodies provide about 70% of the energy requirements of the brain. Under normal conditions, the kidneys excrete about 20 mg of ketone bodies each day, and the blood levels are maintained at about 1 mg of ketone bodies per 100 mL of blood.

In starvation, diabetes mellitus, and certain other physiological conditions in which cells do not receive sufficient amounts of carbohydrate, the rate of fatty acid oxidation increases to provide energy. This leads to an increase in the concentration of acetyl-CoA. The increased acetyl-CoA cannot be oxidized by the citric acid cycle because of a decrease in the concentration of oxaloacetate, which is diverted to glucose synthesis. In response, the rate of ketone body formation in the liver increases further, to a level much higher than can be used by other tissues. The excess ketone bodies accumulate in the blood and the urine, a condition referred to as *ketosis*. When the acetone in the blood reaches the lungs, its volatility causes it to be expelled in the breath. The sweet smell of acetone, a characteristic of ketosis, is frequently noticed on the breath of severely diabetic patients.

Because two of the three kinds of ketone bodies are weak acids, their presence in the blood in excessive amounts overwhelms the blood buffers and causes a marked decrease in blood pH (to 6.9 from a normal value of 7.4). This decrease in pH leads to a serious condition known as *acidosis*. One of the effects of acidosis is a decrease in the ability of hemoglobin to transport oxygen in the blood. In moderate to severe acidosis, breathing becomes labored and very painful. The body also loses fluids and becomes dehydrated as the kidneys attempt to get rid of the acids by eliminating large quantities of water. The lowered oxygen supply and

dehydration lead to depression; even mild acidosis leads to lethargy, loss of appetite, and a generally run-down feeling. Untreated patients may go into a coma. At that point, prompt treatment is necessary if the person's life is to be saved.

24.7: Ketone Bodies and Ketoacidosis is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **20.6: Stage II of Lipid Catabolism** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

24.8: Biosynthesis of Fatty Acids

Learning Objectives

- Describe how fatty acids are synthesized and compare to fatty acid break-down.

Lipogenesis or the synthesis of fatty acids occurs in the cytoplasm and endoplasmic reticulum of the cell and is chemically similar to the beta-oxidation process, but with a couple of key differences. The first of these occur in preparing substrates for the reactions that grow the fatty acid. Transport of acetyl-CoA from the mitochondria occurs when it begins to build up. Two molecules can play roles in moving it to the cytoplasm – citrate and acetylcarnitine. Joining of oxaloacetate with acetyl-CoA in the mitochondrion creates citrate which moves across the membrane, followed by action of citrate lyase in the cytoplasm of the cell to release acetyl-CoA and oxaloacetate. Additionally, when free acetyl-CoA accumulates in the mitochondrion, it may combine with carnitine and be transported out to the cytoplasm.

The fatty acid chain is built two carbons at a time (opposite of beta-oxidation), beginning with two acetyl-CoA molecules. One is converted to malonyl-CoA by carboxylation, catalyzed by the enzyme acetyl-CoA carboxylase (ACC), the only regulatory enzyme of fatty acid synthesis (Figure 24.8.1). Next, both acetyl-CoA molecules have their CoA portions replaced by a carrier protein known as ACP (acyl-carrier protein) to form acetyl-ACP and malonyl-ACP. Joining of a fatty acyl-ACP (in this case, acetyl-ACP) with malonyl-ACP splits out the carboxyl that was added and creates the intermediate at the upper right in the figure at left.

F
igure 24.8.1: *Fatty Acid Synthesis*

From this point forward, the chemical reactions resemble those of beta oxidation reversed. First, the ketone is reduced to a hydroxyl using NADPH. In contrast to the hydroxylated intermediate of beta oxidation, the beta intermediate here is in the D-configuration. Next, water is removed from carbons 2 and 3 of the hydroxyl intermediate to produce a trans doubled bonded molecule. Last, the double bond is hydrogenated to yield a saturated intermediate. The process cycles with the addition of another malonyl-ACP to the growing chain until ultimately an intermediate with 16 carbons is produced (palmitoyl-CoA). At this point, the cytoplasmic synthesis ceases.

Enzymes of Fatty Acid Synthesis

Acetyl-CoA carboxylase, which catalyzes synthesis of malonyl-CoA, is the only regulated enzyme in fatty acid synthesis. Its regulation involves both allosteric control and covalent modification. The enzyme is known to be phosphorylated by both AMP Kinase and Protein Kinase A. Dephosphorylation is stimulated by phosphatases activated by insulin binding. Dephosphorylation activates the enzyme and favors its assembly into a long polymer, while phosphorylation reverses the process.Citrate acts as an allosteric activator and may also favor polymerization. Palmitoyl-CoA allosterically inactivates it.

Figure 24.8.2: Fatty Acid Synthase (FAS) revised model with positions of polypeptides, three catalytic domains and their corresponding reactions, visualization by Kosi Gramatikoff. Note that FAS is only active as a homodimer rather than the monomer pictured. (Public Domain; Kosigrim)

In animals, six different catalytic activities necessary for the remaining catalytic actions to fully make palmitoyl-CoA are contained in a single complex called Fatty Acid Synthase (Figure 24.8.2). These include transacylases for swapping CoA with ACP on acetyl-CoA and malonyl-CoA; a synthase to catalyze addition of the two carbon unit from the three carbon malonyl-ACP in the first step of the elongation process; a reductase to reduce the ketone; a dehydrase to catalyze removal of water, and a reductase to reduce the trans double bond. In bacteria, these activities are found on separate enzymes and are not part of a complex.

Elongation of Fatty Acids

Elongation to make fatty acids longer than 16 carbons occurs in the endoplasmic reticulum and is catalyzed by enzymes described as elongases. Mitochondria also can elongate fatty acids, but their starting materials are generally shorter than 16 carbons long. The mechanisms in both environments are similar to those in the cytoplasm (a malonyl group is used to add two carbons, for example), but CoA is attached to the intermediates, not ACP. Further, whereas cytoplasmic synthesis employs the fatty acid synthase complex (Figure 24.8.2), the enzymes in these organelles are separable and not part of a complex.

Desaturation of Fatty Acids

Fatty acids are synthesized in the saturated form and desaturation occurs later. Enzymes called desaturases catalyze the formation of cis double bonds in mature fatty acids. These enzymes are found in the endoplasmic reticulum. Animals are limited in the desaturated fatty acids they can make, due to an inability to catalyze reactions beyond carbons 9 and 10. Thus, humans can make

oleic acid, but cannot synthesis linoleic acid or linolenic acid. Consequently, these two must be provided in the diet and are referred to as essential fatty acids.

24.8: Biosynthesis of Fatty Acids is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

25: Nucleic Acids and Protein Synthesis

25.1: DNA, Chromosomes, and Genes
25.2: Composition of Nucleic Acids
25.3: The Structure of Nucleic Acid Chains
25.4: Base Pairing in DNA- The Watson-Crick Model
25.5: Nucleic Acids and Heredity
25.6: Replication of DNA
25.7: Translation- Transfer RNA and Protein Synthesis
25.8: Structure and Function of RNA
25.9: Transcription - RNA Synthesis
25.10: The Genetic Code

25: Nucleic Acids and Protein Synthesis is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

25.1: DNA, Chromosomes, and Genes

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

25.1: DNA, Chromosomes, and Genes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

25.2: Composition of Nucleic Acids

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

25.2: Composition of Nucleic Acids is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

25.3: The Structure of Nucleic Acid Chains

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

25.3: The Structure of Nucleic Acid Chains is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

25.4: Base Pairing in DNA- The Watson-Crick Model

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

25.4: Base Pairing in DNA- The Watson-Crick Model is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

25.5: Nucleic Acids and Heredity

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

25.5: Nucleic Acids and Heredity is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

25.6: Replication of DNA

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

25.6: Replication of DNA is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

25.7: Translation- Transfer RNA and Protein Synthesis

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

25.7: Translation- Transfer RNA and Protein Synthesis is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

25.8: Structure and Function of RNA

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

25.8: Structure and Function of RNA is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

25.9: Transcription - RNA Synthesis

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

25.9: Transcription - RNA Synthesis is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

25.10: The Genetic Code

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

25.10: The Genetic Code is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

26: Genomics

26.1: Mapping the Human Genome
26.2: A Trip Along a Chromosome
26.3: Mutations and Polymorphisms
26.4: Recombinant DNA
26.5: Genomics- Using What We Know

26: Genomics is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

26.1: Mapping the Human Genome

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

26.1: Mapping the Human Genome is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

26.2: A Trip Along a Chromosome

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

26.2: A Trip Along a Chromosome is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

26.3: Mutations and Polymorphisms

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

26.3: Mutations and Polymorphisms is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

26.4: Recombinant DNA

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

26.4: Recombinant DNA is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

26.5: Genomics- Using What We Know

26.5: Genomics- Using What We Know is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

27: Chemical Messengers- Hormones, Neurotransmitters, and Drugs

27.1: Messenger Molecules
27.2: Hormones and the Endocrine System
27.3: How Hormones Work - Epinephrine and Fight-or-Flight
27.4: Amino Acid Derivatives and Polypeptides as Hormones
27.5: Steroid Hormones
27.6: Neurotransmitters
27.7: How Neurotransmitters Work- Acetylcholine, Its Agonists and Antagonists
27.8: Histamine and Antihistamines
27.9: Serotonin, Norepinephrine, and Dopamine
27.10: Neuropeptides and Pain Relief
27.11: Drug Discovery and Drug Design

Thumbnail: A ball-and-stick model of testosterone. Testosterone is the primary male sex hormone and an anabolic steroid. Image used with perspective (Public Domain; Ben Mills).

27: Chemical Messengers- Hormones, Neurotransmitters, and Drugs is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

27.1: Messenger Molecules

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

27.1: Messenger Molecules is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

27.2: Hormones and the Endocrine System

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

27.2: Hormones and the Endocrine System is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

27.3: How Hormones Work - Epinephrine and Fight-or-Flight

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

27.3: How Hormones Work - Epinephrine and Fight-or-Flight is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

27.4: Amino Acid Derivatives and Polypeptides as Hormones

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

27.4: Amino Acid Derivatives and Polypeptides as Hormones is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

27.5: Steroid Hormones

27.5: Steroid Hormones is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

27.6: Neurotransmitters

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

27.6: Neurotransmitters is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

27.7: How Neurotransmitters Work- Acetylcholine, Its Agonists and Antagonists

27.7: How Neurotransmitters Work- Acetylcholine, Its Agonists and Antagonists is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

27.8: Histamine and Antihistamines

27.8: Histamine and Antihistamines is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

27.9: Serotonin, Norepinephrine, and Dopamine

28.09: Serotonin Norepinephrine and Dopamine

27.9: Serotonin, Norepinephrine, and Dopamine is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

27.10: Neuropeptides and Pain Relief

28.10: Neuropeptides and Pain Relief

27.10: Neuropeptides and Pain Relief is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

27.11: Drug Discovery and Drug Design

28.11: Drug Discovery and Drug Design

27.11: Drug Discovery and Drug Design is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

28: Body Fluids

28.1: Body Water and Its Solutes
28.2: Fluid Balance
28.3: Blood
28.4: Plasma Proteins, White Blood Cells, and Immunity
28.5: Blood Clotting
28.6: Red Blood Cells and Blood Gases
28.7: The Kidney and Urine Formation
28.8: Urine Composition and Function

Thumbnail: Capillary blood from a bleeding finger. (CC BY 2.0; Crystal (Crystl) from Bloomington, USA).

28: Body Fluids is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

28.1: Body Water and Its Solutes

28.1: Body Water and Its Solutes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

28.2: Fluid Balance

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

28.2: Fluid Balance is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

28.3: Blood

https://bio.libretexts.org/Bookshelv.../17.5%3A_Blood

28.3: Blood is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

28.4: Plasma Proteins, White Blood Cells, and Immunity

28.4: Plasma Proteins, White Blood Cells, and Immunity is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

28.5: Blood Clotting

https://bio.libretexts.org/TextMaps/...Blood_Clotting

https://bio.libretexts.org/Bookshelv...in%20molecules.

28.5: Blood Clotting is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

28.6: Red Blood Cells and Blood Gases

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

28.6: Red Blood Cells and Blood Gases is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

28.7: The Kidney and Urine Formation

Maps take some time to build because we have to find or write matching materials. LibreTexts POV is that it is best to make available pages that we have finished rather than wait till the entire project is complete .This map is not completely finished, some pages are missing but we are workin' on it. . . If you know of some open materials which could be used here let us know info@libretexts.org (Public Domain ; Public Domain Pictures)

28.7: The Kidney and Urine Formation is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

28.8: Urine Composition and Function

Learning Objectives

- Describe how normal urine consists of water, urea, salts and pigment

Urine is a liquid byproduct of the body secreted by the kidneys through a process called urination and excreted through the urethra. The normal chemical composition of urine is mainly water content, but it also includes nitrogenous molecules, such as urea, as well as creatinine and other metabolic waste components. Other substances may be excreted in urine due to injury or infection of the glomeruli of the kidneys, which can alter the ability of the nephron to reabsorb or filter the different components of blood plasma.

Normal Chemical Composition of Urine

Urine is an aqueous solution of greater than 95% water, with a minimum of these remaining constituents, in order of decreasing concentration:

- Urea 9.3 g/L.
- Chloride 1.87 g/L.
- Sodium 1.17 g/L.
- Potassium 0.750 g/L.
- Creatinine 0.670 g/L .
- Other dissolved ions, inorganic and organic compounds (proteins, hormones, metabolites).

Urine is sterile until it reaches the urethra, where epithelial cells lining the urethra are colonized by facultatively anaerobic gram-negative rods and cocci. Urea is essentially a processed form of ammonia that is non-toxic to mammals, unlike ammonia, which can be highly toxic. It is processed from ammonia and carbon dioxide in the liver.

Abnormal Types of Urine

There are several conditions that can cause abnormal components to be excreted in urine or present as abnormal characteristics of urine. They are mostly referred to by the suffix -uria. Some of the more common types of abnormal urine include:

- Proteinuria—Protein content in urine, often due to leaky or damaged glomeruli.
- Oliguria—An abnormally small amount of urine, often due to shock or kidney damage.
- Polyuria—An abnormally large amount of urine, often caused by diabetes.
- Dysuria—Painful or uncomfortable urination, often from urinary tract infections.
- Hematuria—Red blood cells in urine, from infection or injury.
- Glycosuria—Glucose in urine, due to excess plasma glucose in diabetes, beyond the amount able to be reabsorbed in the proximal convoluted tubule.

Summary

Urine is a liquid by-product of the body secreted by the kidneys through a process called urination and excreted through the urethra. It is an aqueous solution of greater than 95% water. Other constituents include urea, chloride, sodium, potassium, creatinine and other dissolved ions, and inorganic and organic compounds. Urea is a non-toxic molecule made of toxic ammonia and carbon dioxide. Any abnormal constituents found in urine are an indication of disease.

References

1. **"Boundless."** http://www.boundless.com/Boundless Learning CC BY-SA 3.0.
2. **"red blood cell."** http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/red_blood_cellWiktionary CC BY-SA 3.0.
3. **"diabetes."** en.wiktionary.org/wiki/diabetesWiktionary CC BY-SA 3.0.
4. **"urine."** en.wiktionary.org/wiki/urineWiktionary CC BY-SA 3.0.

Contributors and Attributions

- Boundless (www.boundless.com)

28.8: Urine Composition and Function is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

Index

G

glycolysis
22.3: Glycolysis

Glossary

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: Chem 114: Human Chemistry II (Muíño)

Webpages: 181

All licenses found:

- Undeclared: 100% (181 pages)

By Page

- Chem 114: Human Chemistry II (Muíño) - *Undeclared*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 12: Introduction to Organic Chemistry - Alkanes - *Undeclared*
    - 12.1: The Nature of Organic Molecules - *Undeclared*
    - 12.2: Families of Organic Molecules - Functional Groups - *Undeclared*
    - 12.3: The Structure of Organic Molecules - Alkanes and Their Isomers - *Undeclared*
    - 12.4: Drawing Organic Structures - *Undeclared*
    - 12.5: The Shapes of Organic Molecules - *Undeclared*
    - 12.6: Naming Alkanes - *Undeclared*
    - 12.7: Properties of Alkanes - *Undeclared*
    - 12.8: Reactions of Alkanes - *Undeclared*
    - 12.9: Cycloalkanes - *Undeclared*
    - 12.10: Drawing and Naming Cycloalkanes - *Undeclared*
  - 13: Alkenes, Alkynes, and Aromatic Compounds - *Undeclared*
    - 13.1: Alkenes and Alkynes - *Undeclared*
    - 13.2: Naming Alkenes and Alkynes - *Undeclared*
    - 13.3: The Structure of Alkenes- Cis-Trans Isomerism - *Undeclared*
    - 13.4: Properties of Alkenes and Alkynes - *Undeclared*
    - 13.5: Types of Organic Reactions - *Undeclared*
    - 13.6: Reactions of Alkenes and Alkynes - *Undeclared*
    - 13.7: Alkene Polymers - *Undeclared*
    - 13.8: Aromatic Compounds and the Structure of Benzene - *Undeclared*
    - 13.9: Naming Aromatic Compounds - *Undeclared*
    - 13.10: Reactions of Aromatic Compounds - *Undeclared*
  - 14: Some Compounds with Oxygen, Sulfur, or a Halogen - *Undeclared*
    - 14.1: Alcohols, Phenols, and Ethers - *Undeclared*
    - 14.2: Some Common Alcohols - *Undeclared*
    - 14.3: Naming Alcohols - *Undeclared*
    - 14.4: Properties of Alcohols - *Undeclared*
    - 14.5: Reactions of Alcohols - *Undeclared*
    - 14.6: Phenols - *Undeclared*
    - 14.7: Acidity of Alcohols and Phenols - *Undeclared*
    - 14.8: Ethers - *Undeclared*
    - 14.9: Thiols and Disulfides - *Undeclared*
    - 14.10: Halogen-Containing Compounds - *Undeclared*
  - 15: Amines - *Undeclared*
    - 15.1: Amines - *Undeclared*
    - 15.2: Properties of Amines - *Undeclared*
    - 15.3: Heterocyclic Nitrogen Compounds - *Undeclared*
    - 15.4: Basicity of Amines - *Undeclared*
    - 15.5: Amine Salts - *Undeclared*
    - 15.6: Amines in Plants- Alkaloids - *Undeclared*
  - 16: Aldehydes and Ketones - *Undeclared*
    - 16.1: The Carbonyl Group - *Undeclared*
    - 16.2: Naming Aldehydes and Ketones - *Undeclared*
    - 16.3: Properties of Aldehydes and Ketones - *Undeclared*
    - 16.4: Some Common Aldehydes and Ketones - *Undeclared*
    - 16.5: Oxidation of Aldehydes - *Undeclared*
    - 16.6: Reduction of Aldehydes and Ketones - *Undeclared*
    - 16.7: Addition of Alcohols - Hemiacetals and Acetals - *Undeclared*
  - 17: Carboxylic Acids and their Derivatives - *Undeclared*
    - 17.1: Carboxylic Acids and Their Derivatives- Properties and Names - *Undeclared*
    - 17.2: Some Common Carboxylic Acids - *Undeclared*
    - 17.3: Acidity of Carboxylic Acids - *Undeclared*
    - 17.4: Reactions of Carboxylic Acids - Ester and Amide Formation - *Undeclared*
    - 17.5: Aspirin and Other Over-the-Counter Carboxylic Acid - *Undeclared*
    - 17.6: Hydrolysis of Esters and Amides - *Undeclared*

- 17.7: Polyamides and Polyesters - *Undeclared*
- 17.8: Phosphoric Acid Derivatives - *Undeclared*

- 18: Amino Acids and Proteins - *Undeclared*
  - 18.1: An Introduction to Biochemistry - *Undeclared*
  - 18.2: Protein Structure and Function- An Overview - *Undeclared*
  - 18.3: Amino Acids - *Undeclared*
  - 18.4: Acid-Base Properties of Amino Acids - *Undeclared*
  - 18.5: Handedness - *Undeclared*
  - 18.6: Molecular Handedness and Amino Acids - *Undeclared*
  - 18.7: Primary Protein Structure - *Undeclared*
  - 18.8: Shape-Determining Interactions in Proteins - *Undeclared*
  - 18.9: Secondary Protein Structure - *Undeclared*
  - 18.10: Tertiary Protein Structure - *Undeclared*
  - 18.11: Quaternary Protein Structure - *Undeclared*
  - 18.12: Chemical Properties of Proteins - *Undeclared*
- 19: Enzymes and Vitamins - *Undeclared*
  - 19.1: Catalysis by Enzymes - *Undeclared*
  - 19.2: Enzyme Cofactors - *Undeclared*
  - 19.3: Enzyme Classification - *Undeclared*
  - 19.4: How Enzymes Work - *Undeclared*
  - 19.5: Effect of Concentration on Enzyme Activity - *Undeclared*
  - 19.6: Effect of Temperature and pH on Enzyme Activity - *Undeclared*
  - 19.7: Enzyme Regulation - Feedback and Allosteric Control - *Undeclared*
  - 19.8: Enzyme Regulation - Inhibition - *Undeclared*
  - 19.9: Enzyme Regulation - Covalent Modification and Genetic Control - *Undeclared*
  - 19.10: Vitamins and Minerals - *Undeclared*
- 20: The Generation of Biochemical Energy - *Undeclared*
  - 20.1: Energy and Life - *Undeclared*
  - 20.2: Energy and Biochemical Reactions - *Undeclared*
  - 20.3: Cells and Their Structure - *Undeclared*
  - 20.4: An Overview of Metabolism and Energy Production - *Undeclared*
  - 20.5: Strategies of Metabolism - ATP and Energy Transfer - *Undeclared*
  - 20.6: Strategies of Metabolism - Metabolic Pathways and Coupled Reactions - *Undeclared*
  - 20.7: Strategies of Metabolism- Oxidized and Reduced Coenzymes - *Undeclared*
  - 20.8: The Citric Acid Cycle - *Undeclared*
  - 20.9: The Electron-Transport Chain and ATP Production - *Undeclared*
  - 20.10: Harmful Oxygen By-Products and Antioxidant Vitamins - *Undeclared*
- 21: Carbohydrates - *Undeclared*
  - 21.1: An Introduction to Carbohydrates - *Undeclared*
  - 21.2: Handedness of Carbohydrates - *Undeclared*
  - 21.3: The D and L Families of Sugars- Drawing Sugar Molecules - *Undeclared*
  - 21.4: Structure of Glucose and Other Monosaccharides - *Undeclared*
  - 21.5: Some Important Monosaccharides - *Undeclared*
  - 21.6: Reactions of Monosaccharides - *Undeclared*
  - 21.7: Disaccharides - *Undeclared*
  - 21.8: Variations on the Carbohydrate Theme - *Undeclared*
  - 21.9: Some Important Polysaccharides - *Undeclared*
- 22: Carbohydrate Metabolism - *Undeclared*
  - 22.1: Digestion of Carbohydrates - *Undeclared*
  - 22.2: Glucose Metabolism - An Overview - *Undeclared*
  - 22.3: Glycolysis - *Undeclared*
  - 22.4: Entry of Other Sugars into Glycolysis - *Undeclared*
  - 22.5: The Fate of Pyruvate - *Undeclared*
  - 22.6: Energy Output in Complete Catabolism of Glucose - *Undeclared*
  - 22.7: 22.7. Regulation of Glucose Metabolism and Energy Production - *Undeclared*
  - 22.8: Metabolism in Fasting and Starvation - *Undeclared*
  - 22.9: Metabolism in Diabetes Mellitus - *Undeclared*
  - 22.10: Glycogen Metabolism- Glycogenesis and Glycogenolysis - *Undeclared*
  - 22.11: Gluconeogenesis- Glucose from Noncarbohydrates - *Undeclared*
- 23: Lipids - *Undeclared*
  - 23.1: Structure and Classification of Lipids - *Undeclared*
  - 23.2: Fatty Acids and Their Esters - *Undeclared*
  - 23.3: Properties of Fats and Oils - *Undeclared*
  - 23.4: Chemical Reactions of Triacylglycerols - *Undeclared*
  - 23.5: Phospholipids and Glycolipids - *Undeclared*
  - 23.6: Sterols - *Undeclared*
  - 23.7: Structure of Cell Membranes - *Undeclared*
  - 23.8: Transport Across Cell Membranes - *Undeclared*
  - 23.9: Eicosanoids- Prostaglandins and Leukotrienes - *Undeclared*
- 24: Lipid Metabolism - *Undeclared*
  - 24.1: Digestion of Triacylglycerols - *Undeclared*
  - 24.2: Lipoproteins for Lipid Transport - *Undeclared*

- 24.3: Triacylglycerol Metabolism - An Overview - *Undeclared*
- 24.4: Storage and Mobilization of Triacylglycerols - *Undeclared*
- 24.5: Oxidation of Fatty Acids - *Undeclared*
- 24.6: Energy from Fatty Acid Oxidation - *Undeclared*
- 24.7: Ketone Bodies and Ketoacidosis - *Undeclared*
- 24.8: Biosynthesis of Fatty Acids - *Undeclared*

- 25: Nucleic Acids and Protein Synthesis - *Undeclared*
  - 25.1: DNA, Chromosomes, and Genes - *Undeclared*
  - 25.2: Composition of Nucleic Acids - *Undeclared*
  - 25.3: The Structure of Nucleic Acid Chains - *Undeclared*
  - 25.4: Base Pairing in DNA- The Watson-Crick Model - *Undeclared*
  - 25.5: Nucleic Acids and Heredity - *Undeclared*
  - 25.6: Replication of DNA - *Undeclared*
  - 25.7: Translation- Transfer RNA and Protein Synthesis - *Undeclared*
  - 25.8: Structure and Function of RNA - *Undeclared*
  - 25.9: Transcription - RNA Synthesis - *Undeclared*
  - 25.10: The Genetic Code - *Undeclared*
- 26: Genomics - *Undeclared*
  - 26.1: Mapping the Human Genome - *Undeclared*
  - 26.2: A Trip Along a Chromosome - *Undeclared*
  - 26.3: Mutations and Polymorphisms - *Undeclared*
  - 26.4: Recombinant DNA - *Undeclared*
  - 26.5: Genomics- Using What We Know - *Undeclared*
- 27: Chemical Messengers- Hormones, Neurotransmitters, and Drugs - *Undeclared*
  - 27.1: Messenger Molecules - *Undeclared*
  - 27.2: Hormones and the Endocrine System - *Undeclared*
  - 27.3: How Hormones Work - Epinephrine and Fight-or-Flight - *Undeclared*
  - 27.4: Amino Acid Derivatives and Polypeptides as Hormones - *Undeclared*
  - 27.5: Steroid Hormones - *Undeclared*
  - 27.6: Neurotransmitters - *Undeclared*
  - 27.7: How Neurotransmitters Work- Acetylcholine, Its Agonists and Antagonists - *Undeclared*
  - 27.8: Histamine and Antihistamines - *Undeclared*
  - 27.9: Serotonin, Norepinephrine, and Dopamine - *Undeclared*
  - 27.10: Neuropeptides and Pain Relief - *Undeclared*
  - 27.11: Drug Discovery and Drug Design - *Undeclared*
- 28: Body Fluids - *Undeclared*
  - 28.1: Body Water and Its Solutes - *Undeclared*
  - 28.2: Fluid Balance - *Undeclared*
  - 28.3: Blood - *Undeclared*
  - 28.4: Plasma Proteins, White Blood Cells, and Immunity - *Undeclared*
  - 28.5: Blood Clotting - *Undeclared*
  - 28.6: Red Blood Cells and Blood Gases - *Undeclared*
  - 28.7: The Kidney and Urine Formation - *Undeclared*
  - 28.8: Urine Composition and Function - *Undeclared*
- Back Matter - *Undeclared*
  - Index - *Undeclared*
  - Glossary - *Undeclared*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*